Professional English in Use

Medicine

Eric H. Glendinning
Ron Howard

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
Contents

INTRODUCTION 8

BASICS 10

1 Health and illness 10
   A Asking about health
   B Sickness
   C Recovery

2 Parts of the body 1 12
   A Parts of the body
   B Referring to parts of the body
   C Describing radiation of pain

3 Parts of the body 2 14
   A The abdomen
   B The chest
   C The pelvis

4 Functions of the body 16
   A Eating
   B The five senses
   C Other functions
   D Less common functions

MEDICAL AND PARAMEDICAL PERSONNEL AND PLACES 18

5 Medical practitioners 1 18
   A Practitioners
   B Specialists
   C Choosing a specialty

6 Medical practitioners 2 20
   A Hospital staff
   B Medical teams
   C Shifts

7 Nurses 22
   A Nursing grades
   B Support workers
   C Specialization
   D The nurse's role

8 Allied health professionals 24
   A Community health
   B Technicians
   C Prosthetists and orthotists
   D Opticians

9 Hospitals 26
   A Introduction to a hospital
   B Outpatients
   C Inpatients

10 Primary care 28
    A The National Health Service
    B The practice team
    C A GP's day

EDUCATION AND TRAINING 30

11 Medical education 1 30
    A Medical education in the UK
    B Extract from an undergraduate prospectus
    C A student's view

12 Medical education 2 32
    A The Foundation Programme
    B People in medical education
    C Medical qualifications

13 The overseas doctor 34
    A Types of registration
    B PLAB
    C PLAB stations and advice

SYSTEMS, DISEASES AND SYMPTOMS 36

14 Symptoms and signs 36
    A Describing problems
    B Presentation
    C Talking about symptoms

15 Blood 38
    A Full blood count
    B Anaemia
    C Pernicious anaemia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>16</th>
<th>Bones</th>
<th>40</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Bones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Fractures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Treatment of fractures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>17</th>
<th>Childhood</th>
<th>42</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Milestones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Common infectious diseases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Coeliac disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>18</th>
<th>The endocrine system</th>
<th>44</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Excess and deficiency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Negative feedback systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Goitre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>A letter of referral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>19</th>
<th>The eye</th>
<th>46</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Parts of the eye</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Examination of the eye</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Retinopathy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>20</th>
<th>The gastrointestinal system</th>
<th>48</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Examination of the abdomen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>The faeces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>21</th>
<th>Gynaecology</th>
<th>50</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>The female reproductive system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Menstruation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>A gynaecological consultation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Contraception</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>22</th>
<th>The heart and circulation 1</th>
<th>52</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Shortness of breath</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Heart rhythm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Heart failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>23</th>
<th>The heart and circulation 2</th>
<th>54</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Physical examination</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Examining the heart and circulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>24</th>
<th>Infections</th>
<th>56</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Microorganisms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Source and spread of infection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>25</th>
<th>Mental illness</th>
<th>58</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Psychiatric disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Substance abuse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Affective disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Neurotic and stress-related disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Other types of functional disorder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>26</th>
<th>The nervous system 1</th>
<th>60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Sensory loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Motor loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Loss of consciousness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>27</th>
<th>The nervous system 2</th>
<th>62</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>The motor system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Tendon reflexes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Coma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>28</th>
<th>Oncology</th>
<th>64</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Neoplasms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Symptoms and signs of malignancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Treatment of tumours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>29</th>
<th>Pregnancy and childbirth</th>
<th>66</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Childbirth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Labour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Presentation and lie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>30</th>
<th>The respiratory system</th>
<th>68</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Cough</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Auscultation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>The skin 1</th>
<th>70</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Some types of skin lesion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Rashes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>32</th>
<th>The skin 2</th>
<th>72</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Injuries to the skin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Case report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Sores</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>33</th>
<th>The urinary system</th>
<th>74</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Urinary symptoms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Urinalysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Health and illness

A Asking about health

Health is the state of the body. When doctors want to know about a patient's usual health, they ask questions such as:

What is your general health like?

How's your health, generally?

If you are in good health, you are well and have no illness (disease). If you are healthy you are normally well and can resist illness. If you are fit, you are well and strong.

B Sickness

Sickness has a similar meaning to illness. It is also used in the names of a few specific diseases, for example sleeping sickness and travel sickness. Patients also talk about sickness when they mean nausea and vomiting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient says</th>
<th>Possible meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was sick this morning.</td>
<td>I was ill this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I felt unwell this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I vomited this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I feel sick.</td>
<td>I feel ill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I feel unwell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am nauseous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I feel the need to vomit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The combination sickness and diarrhoea means vomiting and diarrhoea.

C Recovery

When patients return to normal health after illness, they have recovered. We can also say:

The patient made a good full complete recovery.

If a patient's health is in the process of returning to normal, the patient is improving. The opposite is deteriorating. We can also say that the patient's condition improved or deteriorated.

In speech, we often use the verb get to talk about change:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>get</th>
<th>over (an illness) = to recover</th>
<th>better = to improve</th>
<th>worse = to deteriorate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

If a patient is better, but then gets worse again, the patient has relapsed. Another word for improvement, especially in recurring conditions such as cancer, is remission.

He got over the illness very quickly. Two years later she remains in complete remission.
1.1 Complete the table with words from A and B opposite. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fitness</td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sickness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Look at B and C opposite to help you.

- complete health
- feel sickness
- get remission
- poor sick
- travel over

1.3 Complete the conversation. Look at B opposite to help you.

Doctor: How are you feeling today?
Patient: Not very (1) .......................... .
Doctor: How long have you been feeling (2) .......................... ?
Patient: About a week.
Doctor: What is your (3) .......................... like normally?
Patient: Very good. I’m usually quite (4) .......................... and (5) ..........................
Doctor: What is the problem now?
Patient: It’s my stomach.
Doctor: Do you feel (6) .......................... ?
Patient: Yes.
Doctor: Have you actually been (7) .......................... ?
Patient: No.
Doctor: Have you had any serious (8) .......................... in the past?
Patient: No, none at all.

1.4 Choose the correct word to complete each sentence. Look at B and C opposite to help you.

1. Her condition .......................... (deteriorated/improved) and she died.
2. He .......................... (relapsed/recovered) and was allowed to go home from hospital.
3. The cause of sleeping .......................... (illness/sickness) was discovered in 1901.
4. The patient made a full .......................... (remission/recovery).
5. I have been in .......................... (poor/good) health for months and feel very fit.
6. It was a month before I .......................... (got over / got better) the illness.
7. He seems to be rather .......................... (unhealthy/unwell) – his diet is bad and he never exercises.

---

Over to you

What advice do you give people for keeping fit and well?
Parts of the body

Most external parts of the body have ordinary English names as well as anatomical names. Doctors normally use the English names, even when talking to each other. There are a few exceptions where doctors use the anatomical name; these are shown in brackets below.

Limb means arm (upper limb) or leg (lower limb). The trunk is the body excluding the head and limbs.

For a more detailed diagram showing parts of the body, see Appendix I on page 00.

Referring to parts of the body

When patients speak about their problem they often refer to a part of the body:

The doctor often needs to ask about a part of the body:

Describing radiation of pain

A patient is telling the doctor about his back pain and the parts of the body it radiates to.

It starts in the back. Then it seems to go into the right buttck and down the back of the right thigh to the knee.
2.1 Write the ordinary English words for the corresponding anatomical terms in the table using your medical knowledge. Look at A opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anatomical term</th>
<th>Common word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abdomen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coxa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubitus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mamma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patella</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 Complete the sentences using ordinary English words. Look at A and C opposite to help you.

a A male patient describing angina pectoris:

It’s like a tightness across my (1) ................................... and it goes up (2) ................................... my (3) ................................... and into my left (4) ................................... and (5) ................................... the left (6) ...................................

b A male patient describing renal colic:

It starts (1) ................................... the loin and goes into the (2) ................................... and (3) ................................... into the testicle.

2.3 Complete the sentences. Look at A opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anatomical term</th>
<th>Patient's statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 inguinal swelling</td>
<td>I've got a lump in the ...................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 abdominal pain</td>
<td>My little boy’s got a ................................... ache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 periumbilical rash</td>
<td>I've got some spots around my ...................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 thoracic pain</td>
<td>I've got a pain in the middle of the ...................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 enlarged axillary node</td>
<td>There's a painful swelling in my ...................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 mandibular pain</td>
<td>I've got a pain in my ...................................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.4 Complete the table with words from the box. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>abdomen</th>
<th>knee</th>
<th>elbow</th>
<th>chest</th>
<th>loin</th>
<th>wrist</th>
<th>arm</th>
<th>leg</th>
<th>thigh</th>
<th>finger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trunk</th>
<th>Upper limb</th>
<th>Lower limb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abdomen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Over to you

Make a list of the words from A opposite that you find it hard to remember or that you need most often. Try to learn at least one of them every day.
3 Parts of the body 2

A The abdomen

The main organs of the body have ordinary English names and doctors use these words. But when an adjective is needed they often use an anatomical word. For example, we can say disease of the liver or hepatic disease. Some abdominal organs, for example the pancreas, have no ordinary name.

When doctors talk about the main parts of the digestive system, they use the words bowel or intestine: the small intestine or the small bowel, the large intestine or the large bowel. When speaking to patients, doctors may refer to the anus and rectum as the back passage.

B The chest

The chest (thorax) contains the organs of respiration and the heart. The main parts of the respiratory system are the airways and the lungs. The left lung is divided into two lobes, and the right into three. The airways consist of the larynx, the trachea (or windpipe), the right and left bronchus, and the bronchioles. The chest is separated from the abdomen by the diaphragm.

C The pelvis

A doctor is explaining the function of the bladder to a patient.

The bladder is situated in the pelvis, as you know, and it is connected to each kidney by a long tube called the ureter – one on each side. The ureters carry the urine from the kidneys to the bladder, where it is stored until you decide to empty your bladder. When that happens, the urine passes down another tube, called the urethra, to the outside.
3.1 Label the diagram using words from the box. Look at B opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>diaphragm</th>
<th>lobes</th>
<th>windpipe</th>
<th>heart</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lung</td>
<td>airways</td>
<td>bronchioles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2 Match the conditions (1–8) with the organs affected (a–h), using your medical knowledge.

1 hepatitis  a bladder
2 pneumonia  b gall bladder
3 nephritis  c heart
4 gastric ulcer d kidney
5 cystitis e liver
6 angina pectoris f lung
7 cholecystitis g stomach
8 ulcerative colitis h large bowel

3.3 Complete the textbook extract. Look at A and C opposite to help you.

**Examination of the abdomen**

To examine the patient for enlarged abdominal (1) ___________________ , first feel for the (2) ___________________ and the (3) ___________________ on the right side. To do this, ask the patient to take a deep breath, while pressing with the fingers upwards and inwards. Next, feel for the right (4) ___________________ and then cross over to the other side for the left (5) ________________ . Still on the left side, palpate for an enlarged (6) ___________________. Finally, moving to the lower abdomen, feel for the (8) ___________________ which is only felt if it is full.

**Over to you**

Many patients do not know the location or function of the spleen or the pancreas. How would you explain them to a patient, in English?
Functions of the body

A Eating

You’re hungry.
You’re in a restaurant and the waiter brings your food.

You smell it. It stimulates your appetite – you want to eat.
Your mouth waters, filling with saliva.

You take a bite of the food. It tastes good and you chew it and swallow it.

You eat more, but then suddenly you taste something unpleasant. You feel nauseous.

You rush to the toilet, and get there just in time before vomiting all the food you’ve eaten. Something has disagreed with you.

B The five senses

In addition to smell and taste, the senses include sight (or vision), hearing, and touch (also called sensation or feeling). To ask about the senses, doctors use the questions:

What is your sight like?
What is your hearing normal?

Is your sense of smell normal?
Is your sense of taste normal?

To ask about the sense of touch, doctors talk about numbness (loss of sensation):

Have you noticed any numbness (in your fingers or toes)?

C Other functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speaking</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walking</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>gait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathing</td>
<td>inhale / breathe in / take a breath in</td>
<td>breath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respiration</td>
<td>exhale / breathe out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urination</td>
<td>urinate</td>
<td>urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micturition</td>
<td>micturate pass urine / pass water</td>
<td>faeces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defecation</td>
<td>defecate pass faeces / pass stools</td>
<td>stools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menstruation</td>
<td>menstruate have a period</td>
<td>(menstrual) period (monthly) period</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When taking a history, doctors can ask:

Do you have any trouble difficulty problems walking? breathing? with your speech?

Do you have any pain when you breathe in?

When auscultating a patient’s lungs, the doctor tells the patient:

Take a deep breath in, hold your breath, then breathe out completely.

D Less common functions

There are some things we do less often. When we are hot, we sweat. When we are nervous, we shake. When we are sad, we cry.

Doctors can ask:

Do you sweat shake more than usual?
4.1 Match the symptoms (1–5) to the questions (a–e), using your medical knowledge.

1 dysuria  a What is your breathing like?
2 dysphagia  b Do you have any pain when you pass water?
3 diplopia  c Do you have any difficulty with your speech?
4 dysphasia  d Do you have any trouble swallowing?
5 dyspnoea  e Is your vision normal?

4.2 Patients are describing symptoms of the conditions shown in brackets. Complete the sentences. Look at C and D opposite to help you.

1 I’ve got pain in the \( \underline{\quad} \) in both feet. (peripheral neuropathy)
2 I’m having difficulty \( \underline{\quad} \) solid food. (oesophageal stricture)
3 I have a lot of problems \( \underline{\quad} \) more than usual, even when it’s not hot. (prostatic hypertrophy)
4 I’ve been \( \underline{\quad} \) when I climb the stairs. (left heart failure)
5 I’ve noticed that my hands \( \underline{\quad} \) when I’m not using them. (Parkinsonism)

4.3 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B, C and D opposite to help you.

1 When I eat \( \underline{\quad} \) I have to \( \underline{\quad} \) (bite/chew) it for a long time before I can \( \underline{\quad} \) (swallow/eat) it.

2 Do you have any pain when you \( \underline{\quad} \) (pass/have) stools?

3 I have no \( \underline{\quad} \) (taste/appetite) and I’ve lost five kilos in the last few weeks.

4 When did you last \( \underline{\quad} \) (have/pass) a period?

5 The garden is full of flowers, but my \( \underline{\quad} \) (sense/sensation) of smell has disappeared and I can’t enjoy the perfume.

6 Take a deep \( \underline{\quad} \) (breathe/breath) in.

**Over to you**

You think a patient may have diabetes. Think of five questions you can ask the patient to investigate further. Try to use the question types presented in this unit.
Practitioners

In Britain, doctors, also known as medical practitioners, must be qualified: have a university degree in medicine. They must also be registered – included in the General Medical Council’s list, or register – in order to practise (see Unit 13). A doctor who treats patients, as opposed to one who only does research, is called a clinician. A doctor who provides primary care for patients is known as a general practitioner (GP), or family doctor. GPs usually work in a group practice. Larger group practices work in a building called a health centre.

Note: In British English, the verb is spelt practise and the noun is spelt practice.

Specialties

Specialist doctors, for example paediatricians, generally work in hospitals. However, those who work outside the NHS, providing private health care, may have consulting rooms outside a hospital – for example in the famous Harley Street in London.

The two main branches of medicine are surgery and internal medicine, and the doctors who practise these branches are called surgeons and physicians, respectively. In Britain, male surgeons are addressed as Mr and females as Ms – so Dr Smith is a physician, and Ms Smith is a surgeon.

| A cardiologist | specializes in | diseases of the heart and circulation, or cardiology. |
| A geriatrician | is a specialist in | diseases of elderly patients, or geriatrics. |
| An anaesthetist | | anaesthetics. |

Note: Names of specialties usually end in -ology; names of specialists usually end in -ologist. If the name of a specialty ends in -ics, the name of the specialist ends in -ician. There are some exceptions, e.g. anaesthetics and anaesthetist.

Choosing a specialty

Jill Mathews has just graduated from medical school and is talking about her future.

'I haven't decided what to specialize in yet. I need more experience before I decide, but I'm quite attracted to the idea of paediatrics because I like working with children. I'd certainly prefer to work with children than, say, elderly patients - so I don't fancy geriatrics. I was never very interested in detailed anatomy, so the surgical specialties like neurosurgery don't really appeal. You have to be good with your hands, which I don't think is a problem for me - I've assisted at operations several times, and I've even done some minor ops by myself - but surgeons have to be able to do the same thing again and again without getting bored, like tying off cut arteries and so on. I don't think that would be a problem for me, but they need to make decisions fast and I'm not too good at that. I like to have time to think, which means surgery's probably not right for me.'

Note: The collocation good with is followed by a noun – He's good with children. The collocation good at is followed by the -ing form (gerund) of a verb, or by a noun – She's good at explaining procedures. She's good at explanations.
5.1 Write sentences to describe the work of the specialist in each branch of medicine. Look at B opposite to help you.

1 dermatology
2 rheumatology
3 traumatology
4 paediatrics
5 obstetrics

A dermatologist specializes in diseases of the skin.

5.2 Complete the table with words from A, B and C opposite and related forms. Put a stress mark in front of the stressed syllable in each word. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun (person)</th>
<th>Noun (activity or thing)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specialize</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>practise</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consult</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graduate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualify</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3 Find prepositions in C opposite that can be used to make word combinations with the words in the box. Then use the correct forms of the words to complete the sentences.

good  interested  specialize  work

1 A pathologist .................................. diagnosing disease through examining cells and tissue.
2 A paediatrician must enjoy .................................. children.
3 An oncologist is .................................. the diagnosis and treatment of cancer.
4 A psychiatrist must be .................................. counselling.
5 A neurosurgeon must be .................................. her hands.

5.4 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Two words can be used twice. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

Consulting  general  group  health  internal  surgical

Centre  practice  specialties  medicine  practitioner  rooms

Over to you

Re-read what Dr Jill Mathews says about surgeons in Section C. Make a list of the qualities she thinks are needed to be a good surgeon. Then make a similar list of qualities for another specialty.

If you are a student, which branch of medicine do you think you have the qualities for? If you have already completed your training, why did you choose your particular branch of medicine?
6 Medical practitioners 2

A Hospital staff

The people who work in any type of workplace, including hospitals, are called the staff. The medical staff in a British hospital belong to one of four main groups:

- A **pre-registration house officer (PRHO)**, or **house officer**, is a newly graduated doctor in the first year of postgraduate training. After a year, he or she becomes a registered medical practitioner. In the current system of training, the **Foundation Programme**, the name for these junior doctors is **Foundation Year 1 doctor (FY1)**. (See Unit 12)

- A **senior house officer (SHO)** is in the second year of postgraduate training. The title is now **Foundation Year 2 doctor (FY2)**, but the old terms senior house officer and SHO are still used.

- A **specialist registrar (SpR)** is a doctor who has completed the Foundation Programme, and is training in one of the medical specialties. There are also some **non-training registrars**—doctors who have completed their training but do not wish to specialize yet.

- A **consultant** is a fully qualified specialist. There may also be some **associate specialists**—senior doctors who do not wish to become consultants. In addition, there is at least one medical (or clinical) director, who is responsible for all of the medical staff.

B Medical teams

Consultant physicians and surgeons are responsible for a specific number of patients in the hospital. Each consultant has a **team** of junior doctors to help care for those patients. In many hospitals, there are **multidisciplinary teams** which consist not only of doctors but also of physiotherapists and other allied health professionals (see Unit 8).

When patients enter—or are admitted to—a hospital, they are usually seen first by one of the junior doctors on the **ward** where they will receive treatment and care. The junior doctor **clerks them**—**takes their medical history** (see Units 47–49)—and examines them. Some time later, the registrar also sees the patients, and may order **investigations** or **tests**, for example X-rays or an ECG, make a **provisional diagnosis**, and begin treatment. The consultant usually sees the **new admissions**—people who have recently been admitted to the ward—for the first time on one of the regular **ward rounds**, when the management of the patients is discussed with the registrar. Consultants also decide when a patient is ready to be **discharged** (sent home). On the ward round, the consultant is accompanied by the team and a nurse, and they visit all the patients in the consultant’s care.

C Shifts

Junior doctors now normally work in **shifts**, which means they normally work for eight hours every day, for example 7 am to 3 pm, and are then free until 7 am the next day. After a week they change to a different shift, for example 3 pm to 11 pm or 11 pm to 7 am. The alternative system is to work from 9 am to 5 pm every day and to take turns to be **on call**—available to return to the hospital if necessary—from 5 pm to 9 am the next day. Days on call are set out in a **rota**, or list of names and times. Doctors on call carry a **radio pager**, or **bleeper**, a device which makes a noise when someone is trying to contact them.
6.1 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

- associate
- house
- on
- provisional
- radio
- ward

- call
- diagnosis
- officer
- pager
- round
- specialist

6.2 Match the descriptions (1–5) with the job titles (a–e). Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1. Dr Graham has been a paediatrician for eight years and is responsible for treating the children admitted to Ward 60.
2. Dr Stewart has just started the second year of her Foundation Programme.
3. Dr Singh has started his training as a surgeon.
4. Dr Phillips has just graduated and is working in a large hospital in Birmingham.
5. Dr Millar is in charge of the medical staff in the Birmingham hospital.

a. specialist registrar
b. medical director
c. consultant
d. SHO
e. PRHO or house officer

6.3 Are the following statements true or false? Find reasons for your answers in A, B and C opposite.

1. A medical graduate becomes registered two years after graduation.
2. The system of training doctors in Britain is called the Foundation Programme.
3. The name senior house officer is no longer used in Britain.
4. The consultant is usually the first doctor to see new patients.
5. When working in shifts, all doctors take turns to be on call.

6.4 Complete the text of a PRHO describing her job. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

When I get to the ward, the first thing I do is talk to the house officer who was on duty during the last (1) , to find out if there have been any new

(2) . Then I generally see the charge nurse. He tells me if there is anything that needs to be done urgently, such as intravenous lines to put up or take down. Later in the morning, I (3) any new patients, which basically involves taking a history. On Tuesday and Friday morning the consultant does her ward

(4) , and I have to make sure I'm completely up to date on her patients.

After that, there are usually lots of things to do, like writing up request forms for blood

(5) , and so on. In the afternoon, I have to prepare for any patients who are to be (6) the next day. They're usually happy to be going home!

And then of course there are the lectures and tutorials in the (7) programme on Monday and Wednesday.

Over to you

How does the hospital training of doctors in your country differ from the British system? How would you explain it to a colleague from another country?
Nurses

A Nursing grades
Nurses working in a hospital have the following grades:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>student nurse</th>
<th>a nurse who is still in training</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>staff nurse</td>
<td>a nurse who has completed the training course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge nurse</td>
<td>a more experienced nurse who is in charge of, or responsible for, a ward or department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nurse manager</td>
<td>a nurse who is in charge of several wards</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The old term sister is still sometimes used for a female charge nurse. A female nurse manager may be called matron.

B Support workers
The clinical support worker, who has done a short course and obtained basic qualifications, and the nursing auxiliary, who is usually unqualified, both assist nursing staff. There may also be ward clerks, whose duties include making sure patients’ notes and information are up to date, and answering the telephone.

C Specialization
Like doctors, nurses can specialize:
- A midwife has specialized from the beginning by doing a course in midwifery, the management of pregnancy and childbirth.
- District nurses visit patients in their homes.
- Health visitors also work in the community, giving advice on the promotion of health and the prevention of illness.

D The nurse’s role
The nurse’s role has changed considerably in recent years. In addition to general patient care, checking temperatures, pulse rates and blood pressures, changing dressings, giving injections and removing sutures, nurses now do some of the things previously reserved for doctors, such as prescribing drugs, and ordering laboratory tests. More responsibility for nurses is planned, as the following article demonstrates.

Nurses carry out surgery in effort to cut patient waiting lists
Nurses in Scotland trained to perform minor surgery have entered the operating theatre for the first time in an effort to cut patient waiting times. Five nurses who have passed a new course at Glasgow Caledonian University are now qualified to carry out such procedures as the removal of small lesions, benign moles and cysts.

The Scotsman

The verbs perform and carry out are used with all types of procedures. They are often used in the passive form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>perform</th>
<th>carry out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>an examination</td>
<td>an operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an operation</td>
<td>a procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a procedure</td>
<td>an experiment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an experiment</td>
<td>a test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a test</td>
<td>a biopsy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The procedure was performed carried out by a nurse.
7.1 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1. Someone who specializes in delivering babies is a ____________________.
2. Someone who is qualified to assist nurses is a _____________________.
3. Someone who is not qualified but is able to assist nurses is a _____________________.
4. A nurse who has qualified is a _______________ nurse.
5. A nurse who specializes in health promotion is a _____________________.
6. A nurse who looks after a ward is a _______________ nurse.
7. A nurse who works in the community is a _______________ nurse.
8. Someone who answers the ward telephone is a _______________.

7.2 Make word combinations using a word or phrase from each box. Look at D opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>carry out</th>
<th>sutures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>change</td>
<td>a procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check</td>
<td>an injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>a dressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remove</td>
<td>the temperature</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.3 Complete the sentences with the correct grammatical form of perform.

1. An isotope brain scan is painless and easy _____________________.
2. Biopsy of the pancreas ____________________, last March.
3. If the patient's condition deteriorates, a laparotomy should _____________________.
4. If a diagnosis of meningitis is suspected a lumbar puncture must _____________________.
5. Last year we ____________________ a randomized, double blind group study.

7.4 Complete the sentences with the correct grammatical form of carry out.

1. I now intend ____________________ a larger study.
2. Unfortunately few properly controlled trials ____________________, so far.
3. A number of studies ____________________ recently to look at this question.
4. A right hemicolectomy ____________________ and the patient made a full recovery.
5. This procedure can ____________________ in the emergency department.

Over to you

What kind of tasks do nurses carry out in your country? Are nurses' responsibilities increasing? What are the implications of this?
Allied health professionals

A Community health
The health of the community depends on a large number of people other than medical practitioners and nurses. These can be grouped under the heading of allied health professionals. They include the following:

- Physiotherapists (physios) help people to move by getting them to do exercises or by treating their body with heat or massage – treatment by manipulating muscles and joints with the hands. (See Unit 42)
- Occupational therapists (OTs) help people with a disability to perform tasks at home and at work. A disability is a physical or mental condition that makes it difficult to live normally, for example blindness or deafness.
- Social workers help people to solve their social problems – for example poor housing or unemployment – or family problems.
- Chiropodists, also known as podiatrists, treat conditions affecting the feet.

B Technicians
There are numerous technicians – people who work with scientific equipment – such as radiographers, who are known as X-ray technicians. Ambulance technicians work in the emergency medicine service. An ambulance technician with more advanced qualifications is called a paramedic.

C Prosthetists and orthotists
Prosthetists and orthotists provide care for anyone who needs an artificial limb, (a prosthesis), or a device to support or control part of the body (an orthosis). They also advise on rehabilitation – helping patients return to normal life and work after treatment.

Prosthetists provide artificial replacements for patients who have had an amputation or were born without a limb.

Orthotists provide a range of splints and other devices to aid movement, correct deformity from an abnormal development of part of the body, for example club foot (talipes), and relieve pain.

D Opticians
Opticians test eyesight and prescribe glasses – also known as spectacles – and contact lenses, when necessary. The examination includes measuring intraocular pressure – the pressure of fluid inside the eye – and examining the retina. If the optician suspects an eye disease, such as glaucoma, they refer the patient to their GP for treatment. The GP may then refer the patient to an ophthalmologist, a doctor who specializes in diseases of the eye.
8.1 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Look at A, B, C and D opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ambulance</th>
<th>foot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>artificial</td>
<td>lens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>club</td>
<td>limb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contact</td>
<td>worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health</td>
<td>pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intraocular</td>
<td>technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupational</td>
<td>professional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>social</td>
<td>therapist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.2 Which allied health professionals could best help the following people? Look at A, B, C and D opposite to help you.

1. a young unmarried woman who has just had a baby
2. a woman who is having difficulty using her right arm following a fracture
3. someone who needs glasses
4. an elderly woman who has had a below knee amputation
5. a man whose wife has Alzheimer’s disease
6. a man with a fungal infection of his feet

8.3 Complete the texts. Look at A and C opposite to help you.

A prosthetist works with patients of all ages as a member of a clinical team, based at a large hospital. The patients may need a prosthesis as the result of an accident, or (1) ................................ following a disease such as diabetes. Alternatively they may have been born without a (2) ................................ . Orthotists work alongside doctors, nurses, physiotherapists and occupational (3) ................................ to give the people under their care the best possible (4) ................................ . Their main aim is to enable the patient to lead a normal life at work and leisure.

An orthotist often works in a clinic as part of an outpatient service and also visits other centres to provide a service for people with special needs. They deal with people of all ages. For instance, children who have cerebral palsy may require (5) ................................ to help them walk and many older people need special shoes to correct (6) ................................ . If damaged, any part of the human skeleton may require some form of orthosis. The orthosis may be needed to reposition the body or to (7) ................................ pain.

Over to you

Britain is introducing a new member to the healthcare team, called a medical care practitioner (MCP), similar to the physician assistant in the United States and other countries. The MCP will be able to carry out some of the functions of a medical practitioner, such as history-taking and examination, and diagnosis and treatment of certain illnesses, without having a medical degree. What are the advantages and disadvantages of this in your opinion?
Hospitals

A  Introduction to a hospital
Jordi Pons is a fourth-year medical student from Barcelona. He has come to Britain on an elective attachment to the Royal Infirmary, Edinburgh. Dr Barron is introducing him to the hospital.

Dr Barron: The Royal Infirmary is the name of the university hospital for Edinburgh University. It is a general hospital, dealing with all types of patients and illnesses, except pediatrics. We have a specialist hospital for that in another part of Edinburgh, the Hospital for Sick Children. You can see some of the departments in our hospital on the sign. Of course, there are many others, for example the Intensive Care Unit (ICU), and the Surgical High Dependency Unit (HDU).

Jordi: What does ‘outpatient’ mean?
Dr Barron: Outpatients are the people who come to hospital to attend a clinic or to have tests or treatment and then return home on the same day. Inpatients stay in the hospital for one or more days. The rooms where they stay are called wards. If a patient’s treatment requires only one day, such as a simple operation, they can be admitted to the day surgery unit.

B  Outpatients
Dr Barron: The Accident and Emergency Department (A&E), also called Casualty, is where patients who are acutely ill – with a sudden, serious condition – come for assessment and treatment. Outpatients who have an appointment to see a specialist go to a clinic in one of the Outpatient Departments (OPDs). They have usually been referred to the hospital by their GP, who writes a referral letter to the consultant explaining the patient’s problem.

C  Inpatients
Dr Barron: The inpatients in a hospital are admitted in one of three main ways. They may be seen in one of the outpatient clinics and admitted from there or, if there is a lot of demand for the treatment they need, as in the case of a hip replacement, they are put on a waiting list for admission. Alternatively, their GP may arrange the admission by telephone because they are acutely ill, for example with suspected myocardial infarction. Or they are seen in the A&E Department, where the doctor on duty – working at that time – arranges the admission. This would happen in the case of a patient with a fractured neck of femur, for example. Larger hospitals may have an assessment unit where patients can be admitted temporarily while their condition is assessed.

Jordi: Assessed?
Dr Barron: Yes – decisions are made about their condition, and what needs to be done to help them. After treatment is completed, the patient is discharged back to the GP’s care.
9.1 Complete the table with words from A, B and C opposite. Put a stress mark in front of the stressed syllable in each word. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad'mit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discharge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.2 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Look at C opposite to help you.

- acutely
- assessment
- unit
- on
- letter
- referral
- list
- waiting
- duty
- ill

9.3 Which hospital departments would be most appropriate for the following patients? Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1. a woman in diabetic coma
2. a patient who has just had a radical prostatectomy
3. a patient who is to have a skin lesion removed
4. a man with a foreign body in his eye
5. a woman with a threatened abortion

9.4 Complete the extract from an information leaflet for patients. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

**Information for outpatients**

When you arrive at the (1) ____________, please tell the receptionist who will welcome you, check your details, and direct you to the waiting area. The length of your visit will depend on the (2) ____________ you’re going to have. You may need to have some (3) ____________, such as an X-ray, which could mean going to another (4) ____________. Or you may be (5) ____________ to other professionals, such as a physiotherapist or dietician. You may need to revisit the clinic. If staff at the clinic want to see you again, another appointment will be arranged for you. If you need to be (6) ____________ to hospital for more treatment, either as an inpatient or for (7) ____________, surgery, you will be told when this is likely to happen. If you do not need further treatment you will be (8) ____________ to your GP’s care.

**Over to you**

How do hospitals in your country organize admissions? How would you explain the procedure to a colleague from another country?
Primary care

A The National Health Service

The National Health Service (NHS) is responsible for health care for everyone in the UK, although a small number choose to pay for private care. Treatment is free but there is a prescription charge for drugs and appliances, such as a cervical collar, with exemptions for some patients, such as children and the elderly.

Primary care is provided by general practitioners, or GPs, (sometimes known as family doctors), nurses, dentists, pharmacists and opticians. GPs work in practices of 1 to 20. Practices are based in a surgery and look after the health of from 1,000 to 13,000 people in their local community. They also provide health education in areas such as smoking and diet, run clinics, give vaccinations, for example for influenza, and may perform minor surgery such as removal of warts and moles. If a patient needs specialist care, the GP will make a referral — refer the patient to a consultant in secondary care.

Patients are normally seen on an appointment basis. Home visits are made when patients are housebound — unable to leave their homes — or too ill to attend surgery. Out-of-hours (OOH) treatment, from 6 pm to 8 am, is provided by the local Primary Care Trust, which organizes shifts of GPs and locums GPs to cover if someone is absent.

Note: The noun surgery has three meanings:
- the building where GPs work – The practice has moved to a new surgery on the High Street.
- a time when GPs see patients – Morning surgery is from 8.30 to 12.30.
- the work of surgeons – The patient needs urgent surgery on a burst appendix.

B The practice team

A typical GP practice employs receptionists. They are responsible for initial patient contact, making appointments, taking requests for repeat prescriptions, taking messages from patients and other health care providers, and for filing and scanning documents into patient records. The practice manager has responsibility for finance and sometimes for IT, supervises reception staff, hires locums, and helps prepare the practice development plan. Practice nurses run asthma, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease clinics as well as one-to-one clinics for those who wish to give up smoking.

In addition to practice staff, GPs work with a number of health professionals (see Unit 8):
- District nurses visit temporarily housebound patients, such as recently discharged hospital patients, to change dressings, such as ulcer dressings.
- Health visitors visit families to carry out check-ups on young children – particularly under-fives – to make sure they’re healthy. Special attention is paid to families in need, such as those living in poverty. They also do baby immunizations.
- Midwives run clinics for antenatal patients.
- Physiotherapists provide hands-on treatment but also teach patients exercises they can do to improve their condition after an accident or operation.

C A GP’s day

Dr Stuart works in a practice in a small market town with three other family doctors. The surgery is in the centre of the town and is shared by three practices. This is a typical working morning when she is not the duty doctor, responsible for emergencies and urgent problems.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.00 am</td>
<td>Arrive at the surgery, check OOH email printout, check for urgent and non-urgent messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.30 am</td>
<td>Check emails from the health board and partners, prepare for surgery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.30 - 10.50 am</td>
<td>Morning surgery (ten-minute appointments)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.50 - 10.55 am</td>
<td>Check with reception for messages, sign prescriptions, and deal with repeat prescription requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.00 - 11.20 am</td>
<td>Coffee break in the conference room with colleagues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.20 - 11.30 am</td>
<td>Check home visit requests and divide up visits with colleagues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.30 am - 1.00 pm</td>
<td>Home visits.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.1 Complete the sentences. Look at A opposite to help you.

1. Children, over-60s, and people with some chronic diseases do not have to pay ___________________________ in the UK.
2. Patients with mobility problems may be unable to go out. They are ___________________________.
3. The average GP ___________________________ is ten minutes long.
4. A ___________________________ is someone who takes the place of a staff member who is on leave.
5. Care outside working hours is known as ___________________________.

10.2 Make word combinations using a word or phrase from each box. One word can be used twice. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

change
make
perform
refer
run
supervise
take

messages
staff
appointments
home visits
dressings
a clinic
a patient
minor surgery

10.3 Which member of a practice team would be responsible for each of the following? Look at B opposite to help you.

1. Running a clinic for pregnant women
2. Teaching a patient how to strengthen his broken leg
3. Letting the GP know that a patient can’t come to her appointment
4. Running a clinic for people who want to lose weight
5. Visiting a patient who has just returned home after a hernia operation
6. Carrying out check-ups on children in a poor neighbourhood
7. Organizing cover for an absent doctor

10.4 Complete the diary for Dr Stuart’s afternoon. Look at A and C opposite to help you.

1.00 – 2.00 pm practice team meeting over sandwich lunch
2.00 – 4.00 pm afternoon (1) ___________________________
12 ten-minute (2) ___________________________
4.00 – 4.20 pm coffee break
4.20 – 5.00 pm check with (3) ___________________________ for messages. Deal with home
(4) ___________________________ and repeat (5) ___________________________ requests.
5.00 – 6.00 pm paper work, e.g. (6) ___________________________ to secondary care
admin tasks, telephone calls to patients.
private medical examinations
6.00 pm phones switched to (7) ___________________________ service.

Over to you

Describe a typical day for a GP in your country or in the country where you work.
A Medical education in the UK

Medical education in the UK covers:

- **undergraduate** education – four or five years at medical school, the section of a university responsible for medical education

- a two-year **Foundation Programme** which provides training for new doctors after graduation through a series of placements in different specialties (see Unit 12)

- **postgraduate** training which doctors take to become GPs or consultants – senior specialists – often delivered through colleges for different specialties, for example the Royal College of Physicians

- **continuing professional development** in the form of courses and seminars, which doctors undertake throughout their working lives to keep up to date.

B Extract from an undergraduate prospectus

The MBChB (Bachelor of Medicine, Bachelor of Surgery) is a five-year undergraduate medical degree course. Most of your learning takes place in small groups. The main components are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core (Years 1–3)</th>
<th>Vocational Studies and Clinical Skills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An integrated programme of clinical and scientific topics mainly presented through problem-based learning (PBL), where you work with others on a series of case problems.</td>
<td>This component prepares you for the clinical skills required for contact with patients from Year 1 of your course, through periods of practical training where you are attached to a hospital department or general practice.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Student Selected Modules**
Student selected modules (SSMs) allow you to choose from a menu of subjects such as Sports Medicine or even study a language as preparation for an overseas elective, a hospital attachment of your own choice, between Years 4 and 5.

**Clinical Attachments (Years 4 and 5)**
A series of four-week clinical attachments in Medicine, Surgery, Psychological Medicine, Child Health, Obstetrics & Gynaecology and General Practice.

C A student's view

Ellen, a medical student, describes her course.

‘I’m just finishing my first year of Medicine. What I like about this course is that you’re involved with patients from the very beginning. Even in our first year, we spend time in hospital. Much of the course is PBL. We have two 2-hour sessions a week where we work in groups of eight to ten solving clinical problems. We decide together how to tackle the problem, look up books and online sources, make notes and discuss the case together. It’s a great way of learning and getting to know the other students. In the past, medical students had lectures with the whole class taking notes from lecturers from 9.00 to 5.00, but now it’s mainly group work, although we do have some lectures and seminars, where we work in small groups with a tutor. I like all of it, even the dissection. We get to cut up cadavers from the second month of the course.’
11.1 Match these activities to the stages of medical education in the UK given in A opposite.

1 dissecting cadavers
2 keeping a log of surgical procedures observed and performed
3 working for four months in accident and emergency to experience this specialty
4 taking a four-week attachment in Obstetrics and Gynaecology
5 taking an online course on recent developments in cardiovascular disease

11.2 Complete the sentences. Look at B and C opposite to help you.

1 Just before their final year, students have the chance to take an _________________ in a hospital of their choice anywhere in the world.
2 _________________ contrasts with an approach where each subject is taught separately.
3 These days _________________ are often interactive, with regular opportunities for the students to ask questions.
4 In _________________ students learn how to treat and manage patients.
5 _________________ can be a topic from outside medicine, such as a foreign language.
6 Dissection of _________________ is an important part of the anatomy component.
7 The _________________ at the University of Edinburgh is one of the oldest in the UK.
8 She's a _________________ at the Royal; one of the leading paediatric heart specialists in the country.
9 The Royal _________________ of Surgeons in Edinburgh dates from 1505.
10 We have a _________________ each week where we discuss topics in a small group with our lecturer.

11.3 Match each of these activities to one of the components of the undergraduate course described in B and C opposite.

1 Julie spends six weeks working in a small hospital in the Himalayas.
2 A group of students discuss together the possible reasons for abdominal pain after meals in an obese 44-year-old male.
3 A small group of students trace the pulmonary artery in a cadaver.
4 Otto spends a month working in the paediatric ward of the local hospital.
5 Anne learns how to take blood from an elderly patient.
6 Juma chooses to study Travel Medicine in his fourth year.

**Over to you**

Describe the main components of your undergraduate course.
Medical education 2

The Foundation Programme

The Foundation Programme is a two-year training programme which forms the bridge between university-level study at medical school, and specialist or general practice training. It consists of a series of placements, each lasting four months, which allow the junior doctor, known as a trainee, to sample different specialties, for example paediatrics. A year one trainee (FY1) corresponds to pre-registration house officer (PRHO) posts and a year two trainee (FY2) to senior house officer (SHO) posts. Each trainee has an educational supervisor who ensures that more senior doctors deliver training in different ways, including clinical and educational supervision. To progress, trainees have to demonstrate a range of clinical competencies which are assessed through observation in their workplace.

People in medical education

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tutor</td>
<td>An academic, or in some cases a postgraduate student, who leads tutorials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demonstrator</td>
<td>In anatomy teaching, someone who demonstrates how to dissect. Demonstrators are often postgraduate students paying their way through medical school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lecturer / senior lecturer</td>
<td>An academic with teaching and research responsibilities who contributes to the teaching of a particular discipline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professor</td>
<td>A senior academic with teaching and research responsibilities for a particular discipline. Usually a leading figure in their discipline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>college tutor</td>
<td>A consultant responsible for delivering a college training programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clinical trainer</td>
<td>A consultant assigned to a trainee who provides training during periods of direct clinical care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>educational supervisor</td>
<td>A consultant who supervises a trainee's period of training.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Medical qualifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Qualification</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BMSc</td>
<td>Bachelor of Medical Sciences. A degree often taken after three years of medical studies by students who may wish to follow a career in medical research.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMed Sci</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBChB, MBBS</td>
<td>Bachelor of Medicine, Bachelor of Surgery. Bachelor degrees are undergraduate degrees. This is the first degree for UK doctors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMBCh, BMBS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD, DM</td>
<td>Doctor of Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRCOG</td>
<td>Diploma of the Royal College of Obstetrics and Gynaecology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRCP</td>
<td>Member of the Royal College of Physicians or Member of the Royal College of Surgeons. Doctors become Members by successfully completing the assessment procedures in their college.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRCS</td>
<td>Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons of England. Other colleges are indicated by the letters which follow, for example Edinburgh, Glasgow or Ireland. How doctors become a Fellow depends on their college. For the FRCS, further examinations must be passed. For other colleges it is by nomination or work assessment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRCS(Ed)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRCS(Glas)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRCSI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.1 Complete the phrases with verbs from the box. Two phrases can be completed in two different ways. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>assess</th>
<th>deliver</th>
<th>demonstrate</th>
<th>provide</th>
<th>supervise</th>
<th>take</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ____________ a competence or how to do something
2. ____________ a trainee by ensuring she successfully completes her training
3. ____________ a course or a training programme (as a teacher)
4. ____________ a course or a training programme (as a student)
5. ____________ progress or competence

12.2 Match the two parts of the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1. An FY1 is a doctor
2. A demonstrator is an anatomy teacher
3. A clinical trainer is a consultant
4. A supervisor is a consultant
5. A medical school is
6. A placement is
7. A college is
8. A Fellow is a specialist

a. a body of specialists responsible for delivering and assessing training in their specialty.
b. responsible for the training programme of a trainee.
c. a period spent as a trainee in a hospital or in General Practice.
d. in the first year of the Foundation Programme.
e. who has reached the highest level in their specialty.
f. who provides training during periods of direct clinical care.
g. part of a university responsible for medical education.
h. who teaches dissection.

12.3 Write in full the qualifications of the doctors and surgeons. Look at C opposite to help you.

1. Mr A. H. Younghusband, MBChB, FRCS, FRCSI
2. Dr C Doyle, BMed Sci, DM, MRCP
3. Ms E Inglis, MBBS, FRCS
4. Dr E Merryweather, BM, MD, FRCP

Over to you

How do you become a specialist in your country? List the stages.
The overseas doctor

Types of registration

To manage and treat patients in the UK, all doctors must register with the General Medical Council (GMC). There are several types of registration:

- **Provisional registration** is for doctors who have just qualified from medical school in the UK or from certain European Economic Area (EEA) member states.
- **Full registration** is for doctors who have completed their year's clinical training.
- **Limited registration** is for international medical graduates who have not completed the equivalent of a year's clinical training in the UK.
- **Specialist registration** is for doctors who have completed specialist medical training and have a Certificate of Completion of Training (CCT).

The GP Register is a register of all those eligible to work in general practice in the NHS.

Note: For full details of the General Medical Council see www.gmc-uk.org

PLAB

Before they can obtain full registration, some categories of overseas doctors are required to take the Professional and Linguistic Assessments Board (PLAB) test. PLAB is designed to ensure those who pass can practise safely at the level of an SHO in a first appointment in a UK hospital.

Part 1 consists of a written test of knowledge, skills and attitudes. Part 2 is an Objective Structured Clinical Examination (OSCE). It consists of 16 five-minute clinical scenarios, known as stations, to assess professional skills.

Note: For a full description of PLAB, see http://www.gmc-uk.org/doctors/plab/

PLAB stations and advice

OSCEs assess these skills:

- **Clinical examination:** Your ability to carry out a physical examination of a simulated patient, an actor trained to play this role, will be assessed. Uncomfortable or intimate examinations will be carried out using a manikin, an anatomical model.
- **Practical skills:** You will be assessed on practical skills such as suturing and giving intravenous injections.
- **Communication skills:** Your ability to interact with a simulated patient, or in some cases the examiner, will be assessed. Skills tested may include breaking bad news and giving advice on lifestyle.
- **History taking:** Your ability to take an accurate history and make a reasoned diagnosis will be assessed.

Advice on the stations from a successful candidate:

- **Read the instructions outside each station carefully. You have one minute for this.**
- **Don't forget the ABC (airways, breathing, circulation) protocol in every emergency station.**
- **Keep in mind safety precautions like throwing the sharps in the sharps bin.**
- **Check the patient understands what is happening; then ask them about any concerns they may have. Don't just give a lecture. Listen carefully to what the actor says.**

Note: **Sharps** are needles and blades which must be disposed of safely in a special container called a sharps bin.
13.1 What kind of registration might these doctors obtain? Look at A opposite to help you.
1 A newly qualified Spanish doctor
2 A newly qualified Nigerian doctor
3 A doctor who has successfully completed the first Foundation Year (FY1)
4 An SHO who has successfully completed the Foundation Programme and gained a Certificate of Completion of Training after several specialist registrar posts

13.2 Write the abbreviations in words. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.
1 Any doctor who wants to work in the UK must register with the GMC.
2 Some overseas doctors must pass the PLAB test before they can register.
3 Part 2 of the test consists of an OSCE.
4 In any emergency, remember the ABC protocol.
5 Before you can obtain specialist registration, you must have a CCT.

13.3 Complete the text. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

My name’s Musa and I come from Yemen. I came to the UK about two years ago, after graduating. Because Yemen is outside the EEA, I could only obtain (1) ................................................. with the (2) .................................... at first. It was very difficult for me to obtain a place on a Foundation Programme. Although I speak good English, I had to take the (3) ........................................... test to show that I could work safely in the UK. If I had to give some advice to other candidates, it would be that at counselling (4) ....................................., you shouldn’t simply memorize a set of phrases. It’s better to really think about what you’re saying to the actor and get the intonation right.

After completing my year’s clinical training, I was able to obtain (5) ................................................. . But I found it difficult to get an SHO post in my chosen specialty, paediatrics, as hospitals now have to demonstrate there isn’t a suitable candidate from the EEA. Once I’ve completed my second Foundation Year, I should obtain a (6) ................................................. which will allow me to proceed to (7) ................................................. with the GMC, an important step on the road to becoming a paediatric consultant.

Over to you

Explain how a foreign doctor can register to work in your country. Find out how you can register to work in another country of your choice.
# Symptoms and signs

## A Describing problems

The problems which a patient reports to the doctor are called **symptoms**, for example pain or nausea. **Signs** are what the doctor finds, also known as **findings**, on examining the patient, for example high blood pressure or a rapid pulse rate. Symptoms are also known as **complaints**. To report a patient's symptoms or complaints, doctors say:

> Mr Farnsworth was admitted complaining of chest pain.

In case notes, the abbreviation **c/o** is used:

> c/o chest pain

## B Presentation

Patients say they **went to** [see] the doctor; doctors say the patient **presented**. The symptom which causes a patient to visit a doctor – or to present – is called the **presenting symptom**, **presenting complaint** or **presentation**.

> His presenting symptom was chest pain.

> He presented to his GP with chest pain.

The usual presentation is chest pain.

## C Talking about symptoms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Patients say</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tiredness</td>
<td>loss of energy</td>
<td>I feel tired all the time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lethargy</td>
<td></td>
<td>I feel completely worn out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatigue</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lately I've been feeling completely exhausted at the end of the day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lassitude</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| malaise      | general feeling of being unwell | I feel unwell.  
|              |                          | I don't feel well.                                                            |
|              |                          | I've been feeling off-colour for two days.                                   |
|              |                          | I haven't been feeling myself for a week.                                    |
|              |                          | I've been out of sorts all day.                                               |
| anorexia     | loss of appetite         | My appetite is very poor.                                                     |
|              |                          | I've been off my food for days.                                               |
| weight gain  | increase in weight       | I've put on eight kilos in the last year.                                    |
| weight loss  | decrease in weight       | I've gained five kilos.                                                       |
| constipation | hard, infrequent faeces  | I'm not eating any less than usual but I've lost a lot of weight recently.    |
|              |                          | My motions are very hard.                                                     |
|              |                          | I've been quite constipated lately.                                           |
|              |                          | I'm not very regular.                                                         |

Note: The verb feel is also used with other adjectives, such as **hot, cold, nervous, anxious, dizzy, weak** – She said she felt dizzy.
14.1 Complete the table with words from C opposite. Put a stress mark in front of the stressed syllable in each word. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exhaustion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatigue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lethargy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiredness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>complain</th>
<th>with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worn</td>
<td>sorts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb present.
1 A 67-year-old man ...................... with a 9-month history of increasing shortness of breath.
2 The most common ...................... is loss of consciousness.
3 Cranial arteritis may ...................... as fever without any obvious causes.
4 The patient usually ...................... with a severe sore throat.
5 The ...................... symptoms in this patient could perhaps be due to renal failure.
6 Other conditions with a similar ...................... include acute cholecystitis.
7 Reduced growth is an important ...................... complaint of coeliac disease.
8 Two months following ......................, the patient was able to walk.

14.4 Read the patient’s description of her symptoms then complete the case report. Look at C opposite to help you.

I was well until a few months ago. In the beginning, I just felt off-colour and a bit tired. But lately I’ve been feeling completely worn out at the end of the day. I’m not eating any more than usual but I’ve put on nine kilos in the last year. My motions are hard and my hair has started to fall out.

**Case 13**

A 50-year-old housewife, who had been well until four months previously,

1 ...................... of tiredness and
2 ...................... . She had (3) ......................
9 kg in weight in the year before she
4 ...................... to her GP although she denied eating more than usual. She was
(5) ...................... and she noticed that her
hair had started to fall out.

**Over to you**

Write a short case report about this 60-year-old man:

I haven’t been myself for several months now. I feel completely worn out after doing anything. I’ve been off my food and I’ve lost ten kilos in weight.

Write in the past tense and use medical terms for the underlined expressions. Practise writing similar case reports for your own patients.
Blood

Full blood count

In the investigation of blood diseases, the simplest test is a full blood count (FBC). A full blood count measures the following in a sample of blood:

- the amount of haemoglobin
- the number of the different cells – red blood cells (erythrocytes), white blood cells (leucocytes) and platelets (thrombocytes)
- the volume of the cells
- the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) – a measurement of how quickly red blood cells fall to the bottom of a sample of blood.

Anaemia

Anaemia is one of the commonest diseases of the blood. It may be due to:

- bleeding – loss of blood
- excessive destruction of red cells
- low production, for example because the diet is lacking, or deficient in, iron (Fe).

A medical student has examined an elderly patient with a very low level of haemoglobin and is discussing the case with her professor:

Professor: What’s the most likely diagnosis in this case?
Student: Most probably carcinoma of the bowel with chronic blood loss.
Professor: What’s against that as a diagnosis?
Student: Well, he hasn’t had any change in his bowel habit, or lost weight.
Professor: What else would you include in the differential diagnosis of severe anaemia in a man of this age?
Student: He might have leukaemia of some sort, or aplastic anaemia, but that’s rare – it would be very unusual. Another cause is iron deficiency, but he seems to have an adequate diet.
Professor: OK. Now, there’s another cause of anaemia which I think is more likely.
Student: Chronic bleeding ulcer?
Professor: Yes, that’s right. But what about pernicious anaemia? Can you exclude that?
Student: Well, he’s got none of the typical neurological symptoms, like paraesthesiae.

Pernicious anaemia

Jordi Pons, the medical student from Barcelona, has made some language notes in his textbook.

Pernicious anaemia (PA) is a condition in which there is atrophy of the gastric mucosa with consequent failure of intrinsic factor production and vitamin B₁₂ malabsorption. The onset is insidious, with progressively increasing symptoms of anaemia. Patients are sometimes said to have a lemon-yellow colour owing to a combination of pallor and mild jaundice caused by excessive breakdown of haemoglobin because of ineffective red cell production in the bone marrow. A red sore tongue (glossitis) is sometimes present. Patients present with symmetrical paraesthesiae in the fingers and toes, early loss of vibration sense, and progressive weakness and ataxia. The spleen may be palpable.

onset = beginning
insidious = slowly developing
pallor = lack of colour
mild = slight
jaundice = bilirubinaemia
breakdown = division into smaller parts
bone marrow = soft tissue in the cavity of bones
symmetrical = each side the same
vibration sense = ability to feel vibrations
progressive = continuing to develop
palpable = can be felt with the hand.
15.1 Find words in the box with opposite meanings. Look at B and C opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adequate</th>
<th>unlikely</th>
<th>mild</th>
<th>common</th>
<th>insidious</th>
<th>for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>against</td>
<td>severe</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>sudden</td>
<td>inadequate</td>
<td>likely</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.2 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Look at B and C opposite to help you.

bone, differential, insidious, iron, pernicious, progressively, vibration

diagnosis, sense, onset, marrow, increasing, deficiency, anaemia

15.3 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1. A 39-year-old man presented with a history of ______________ abdominal distension over a period of six months.
2. Blindness may be caused by vitamin A ____________
3. The bleeding and purpura are caused by abnormal ____________ function.
4. The white cell count is normal so we can ______________ acute leukaemia.
5. The yellow colour of her skin and conjunctivae is probably due to ______________
6. There was a ______________ mass in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen.
7. Treatment is aimed at restoring fluid balance with ______________ intravenous fluids.
8. The anaemia may be due to increased red cell ______________

15.4 Complete the conversation. Look at C opposite to help you.

Professor: What is against the diagnosis of pernicious anaemia on physical examination?
Student: The problem started quite suddenly. So it didn’t have the typical (1) ______________
          ______________. He doesn’t have any skin (2) ______________ and he doesn’t have (3) ______________ paraesthesiae, or absent (4) ______________ sense, and I couldn’t feel his spleen.
Professor: What about his tongue?
Student: His tongue was normal and not inflamed or (5) ______________

Over to you

List the causes of anaemia mentioned in the conversation in B opposite. Then choose another condition that you encounter regularly and make a similar list of the causes in English. Use the index to help you.
Bones

Some common English names for bones:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English name</th>
<th>Anatomical name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skull</td>
<td>cranium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaw bone</td>
<td>mandible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spine</td>
<td>vertebral column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breastbone</td>
<td>sternum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rib</td>
<td>costa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collarbone</td>
<td>clavicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoulder blade</td>
<td>scapula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thigh bone</td>
<td>femur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneecap</td>
<td>patella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shinbone</td>
<td>tibia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fractures

A fracture is a break in a bone. Some of the different types of fracture:

- greenstick
- displaced
- comminuted
- impacted
- open (compound)

A pathological fracture is fracture in a diseased bone. A fatigue or stress fracture is due to repeated minor trauma, for example long-distance marching or running.

Treatment of fractures

When the fragments of a broken bone heal and join together, they unite. Union may be promoted, or helped, by reducing the fracture – replacing the fragments in their anatomical position if they are displaced. After reduction, excessive movement of the broken bone is prevented by fixation – either external, for example a splint or plaster of Paris cast, or internal, for example a pin or a plate and screws. A displaced fracture which is not reduced may result in malunion – incomplete or incorrect union.

Note: The verb reduce has several meanings in medicine:
- to make smaller – I think we’d better reduce the dose of your tablets.
- (in surgery) to return to anatomical position – A hernia can normally be reduced by manipulation.
- (in chemistry) to remove oxygen or add hydrogen – Nitric acid is a reducing agent.
16.1 Label the diagram using words from the box. Look at A opposite to help you.

breastbone
collarbone
clavicle
jaw bone
knee cap
rib
shin bone
shoulder blade
skull
spine
thigh bone

16.2 Match the types of fracture (1–5) with the descriptions (a–c). Look at B opposite to help you.

1 open
2 comminuted
3 displaced
4 greenstick
5 impacted

a There is a break in the skin.
b The bone is bent. It occurs mainly in children.
c The bone is broken into several pieces.
d The broken pieces are separated.
e The broken pieces are pushed together.

16.3 Complete the textbook extract. Look at C opposite to help you.

(1) .................... a fracture involves trying to return the bones to as near to their original position as possible. If a fracture is allowed to heal in a displaced position the fracture will (2) .................... but it may go on to (3) .................... .

Over to you

You have diagnosed a stress fracture of the tibia in a young female dancer. How would you explain to her the cause and management of this condition?
Childhood

Milestones

Childhood is the period during which a person is a child. It ends with puberty – the onset of sexual maturity. Infant is another word for a young child; infancy is the period from birth until about five years of age.

The milestones in a child's development and the ages at which they usually occur are:

- sitting – by 9 months
- crawling – by 12 months
- first words – by 18 months
- walking – by 18 months
- talking (two-word sentences) – by 3 years.

Common infectious diseases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Common name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>morbilli/rubeola</td>
<td>measles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubella</td>
<td>German measles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>varicella</td>
<td>chickenpox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infectious parotitis</td>
<td>mumps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pertussis</td>
<td>whooping cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acute laryngotraceitis</td>
<td>croup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scarlatina</td>
<td>scarlet fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rheumatic fever</td>
<td>rheumatic fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tetanus</td>
<td>lockjaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poliomyelitis</td>
<td>polio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Coeliac disease

A medical student has made some language notes while reading her textbook.

Coeliac disease is a disease of the small intestine caused by sensitivity to gluten. It can present at any age but in infancy it appears after weaning on to cereals containing gluten. The clinical features include diarrhoea, malabsorption and failure to thrive. There may be signs of malnutrition and there may be some abdominal distension. There is delayed growth and delayed puberty, leading to short stature in adulthood.

sensitivity to = having a negative reaction to
weaning = changing the diet from milk only to solid foods
clinical features = the symptoms and signs of a disease
malabsorption = poor absorption
malnutrition = poor diet (nutrition)
adjective = malnourished
thrive = grow strongly
distension = swelling
delayed = later than expected
failure = when something that is expected does not happen
stature = size, especially height
17.1 Complete the table with words from A and C opposite. Then complete the sentences with words from the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun(s)</th>
<th>Adjective(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>delay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distend</td>
<td></td>
<td>distended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nourish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Babies with the fetal alcohol syndrome may present with ......................... to thrive.
2 Abdominal ....................... may be due to an enlarged liver.
3 Small amounts of alcohol in pregnancy can affect fetal ....................... .
4 Mortality from measles can be reduced by better ....................... .
5 ....................... in one or more of the milestones may be the first sign of disease.

17.2 Complete the sentences. Look at A and C opposite to help you.
1 After sitting, babies learn to ......................... and then to walk.
2 A child who has started eating solid food has been ......................... .
3 Someone who is not very tall is said to be of short ......................... .
4 The stages in a child’s development are known as the ......................... .
5 A child who is beginning to develop sexually has reached ......................... .

17.3 Write the common English name for each disease, using your medical knowledge.
1 enlarged parotid glands
2 difficulty opening the mouth
3 rash and enlarged posterior occipital nodes
4 paroxysmal cough with vomiting
5 papules and vesicles, first on trunk
6 cough and cold followed by rash
7 sore throat and rash
8 swollen joints and a heart murmur
9 fever followed by muscle weakness
10 cough with stridor

Over to you
What are the main childhood illnesses in your country? What are the clinical features of those illnesses?
The endocrine system

Excess and deficiency
An excess – too much, or a deficiency – too little, of circulating hormones causes a wide range of medical conditions, for example hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism. Where there is an excess of hormone, one form of treatment consists of giving the patient something which inhibits the production of that hormone, as in the use of carbimazole to treat hyperthyroidism. When a hormone is deficient, treatment may be by replacement therapy, for example injections of insulin in the treatment of Type 1 diabetes.

Doctors say:

Sufferers of type 1 diabetes are deficient in insulin.

Negative feedback systems

1. TRH (thyrotrophin-releasing hormone) is secreted in the hypothalamus and triggers the production of TSH (thyroid-stimulating hormone) in the pituitary.

2. TSH stimulates the TSH receptor in the thyroid to increase synthesis of both T4 (thyroxine) and T3 (triiodothyronine) and also to release stored hormone, producing increased plasma levels of T4 and T3.

3. T3 feeds back on the pituitary and perhaps the hypothalamus to inhibit TRH and TSH secretion.

Goitre
An enlarged thyroid gland is called a goitre. The enlargement may be diffuse – involving most of the gland, or localized – limited to a particular area, as in a solitary (single) nodule. The increased blood flow in diffuse enlargement, for example in Graves' disease, may give rise to a palpable thrill – vibration felt with the hand, and an audible bruit – noise heard through a stethoscope, over the gland.

A letter of referral
Mrs Davis's doctor has referred her to an endocrinologist.

Dear Doctor,
I would be grateful if you would see this 50-year-old woman who has lost 20 kilos in weight in spite of eating more than usual. She describes herself as overactive and at first she thought the weight loss was due to this. But more recently she has developed palpitations, diarrhea, and heat intolerance. She has noticed that her hands have a tendency to shake. Her symptoms suggested hyperthyroidism and this was confirmed by my examination which revealed an enlarged thyroid, red sweaty palms and a fine tremor of the hands.
18.1 Complete the table with words from A, B and C opposite and related forms. Put a stress mark in front of the stressed syllable in each word. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inhibit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>produce</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>release</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>replace</td>
<td>secretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stimulation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18.2 Complete the passage from a textbook, using the illustration and your own knowledge. Look at B opposite to help you.

Pulses of GnRH (gonadotrophin-releasing hormone) are released from the hypothalamus and (1) ______________ LH and FSH (2) ______________ from the pituitary. LH (3) ______________ testosterone (4) ______________ from Leydig cells of the testis.

Testosterone (5) ______________ back on the hypothalamus/pituitary to (6) ______________ GnRH (7) ______________. FSH (8) ______________ the Sertoli cells in the seminiferous tubules to (9) ______________ mature sperm and the inhibins A and B. Inhibin causes feedback on the pituitary to decrease FSH (10) ______________.

18.3 Complete the sentences. Look at A and C opposite to help you.

1 A _______________ change affects many parts of an organ or gland.
2 A _______________ change affects only one part.
3 His diet is _______________ in iron; he doesn't get enough iron.
4 _______________ T₃ and T₄ increase the basal metabolic rate.

18.4 Match Mrs Davis's symptoms (1–7) with the questions her doctor asked (a–g). Look at D opposite to help you.

1 diarrhea            a Do you prefer hot weather or cold?
2 eating more          b Is your weight steady?
3 heat intolerance     c What is your appetite like?
4 overactivity         d Are your bowels normal?
5 palpitations         e Are you able to sit and relax?
6 weight loss          f Do your hands shake?
7 tremor               g Have you ever felt your heart beating rapidly or irregularly?

Over to you

Write a referral letter to an endocrinologist for a patient who you believe has hypothyroidism. Use the letter in D opposite as a model.
The eye

A Parts of the eye

- eyebrow
- eyelid
- eyelashes
- iris
- pupil

B Examination of the eye

Here is an extract from a textbook description of how to examine the eye.

Look for squint (strabismus), *dipping* of the upper lid (ptosis) or oscillation of the eyes (nystagmus). In *lid lag*, the upper eyelid moves irregularly instead of smoothly when the patient is asked to look down.

Next, examine the pupils and note whether:
- they are equal in size
- they are *regular in outline* (evenly circular)
- they are abnormally *dilated* (large) or *constricted* (small)
- they react normally to light and *accommodation* (focus on near objects).

To test the reaction to accommodation, ask the patient to look into the distance. Hold your finger in front of their nose, and ask the patient to look at it. The eyes should come together, or *converge*, and the pupils should *constrict* as the patient looks at the finger.

Check also for *cataract* (opacity of the lens).

C Retinopathy

Hypertensive changes in the retina can be classified from grades 1 to 4:
- grade 1 – *silver wiring* (increase in the light reflex) of the arteries only
- grade 2 – grade 1 plus arteriovenous *nipping* (indentation of veins where they are crossed by arteries)
- grade 3 – grade 2 plus *flame-shaped haemorrhages* and *cottonwool exudates*
- grade 4 – grade 3 plus *papilloedema*. 

- cottonwool exudate
19.1 Complete the table with words from B opposite and related forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accommodate</td>
<td>constriction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>convergence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dilation,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dilatation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>droop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oscillate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>react</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19.2 Match the pictures (1–6) with the conditions (a–f). Look at B opposite to help you.

1. [Picture 1]
2. [Picture 2]
3. [Picture 3]
4. [Picture 4]
5. [Picture 5]
6. [Picture 6]

a) drooping of lids
b) dilated pupils
c) irregular pupil
d) cataract
e) squint
f) constricted pupils

19.3 Complete the extract from a textbook. Look at C opposite to help you.

Retinoscopy
Examine the retina with an ophthalmoscope, if possible with the (1) ________________,
dilated to obtain the maximum view. Look for papilloedema, and for (2) ________________-
_______________, haemorrhages and (3) _________________, exudates. Assess the state of
the (4) _________________ and note the presence of any narrowing, as well as
(5) _________________ at arteriovenous crossings.

Over to you
Traditionally, eyesight problems are corrected with spectacles or contact lenses. In recent
years, laser therapy has become a popular alternative. What are the advantages and
disadvantages of this technique?
The gastrointestinal system

Examination of the abdomen

Here is an extract from a textbook description of how to examine the abdomen.

Note if the abdomen is distended by fluid or gas. The presence of fluid can be confirmed by demonstrating shifting dullness: percuss, or tap, first with the patient lying supine – flat on their back; then ask the patient to lie on one side and percuss again. If fluid is present, the dull note heard on percussion moves. Palpate each region, feeling for tenderness – pain when touched, or masses – palpable enlargement of tissue. Note also any guarding or rigidity, shown by contraction of the abdominal muscles. Guarding may be due to tenderness or anxiety and can be reduced if the patient is persuaded to relax. Rigidity, however, is constant and is due to peritoneal irritation. Rebound tenderness is pain when the palpating hand is suddenly removed. It is a sign of peritonitis. Listen for bowel sounds.

The faeces

There are several words for the faeces.

Doctors sometimes say:

- There was blood in the stools.
- Have you passed black stools?

Patients sometimes say:

- My motions have been very loose lately.
- Have you had a bowel movement today?

Bowel movement is used to refer to defecation:

- Have your bowels moved today?
- How often do you open your bowels?

Bowel habit is a medical expression meaning the pattern of defecation.

- Have you noticed any change of bowel habit?
- Are you going to the toilet more often than normal?

Change in bowel habit could be constipation – hard, infrequent stools, or diarrhoea – frequent soft or liquid stools.

Normal stools are brown in colour, and semi-solid, or formed. The consistency, or degree of hardness and softness, can be shown on a scale:

- hard
- formed
- semi-formed
- soft (loose)
- liquid/watery

The colour can vary from black, due to altered blood as in melaena, to yellow, grey or even white. Melaena stools are often described as tarry – like tar, the black sticky substance that is used in road making. The stools may be red when fresh blood is present. Blood that can only be detected with special tests is called faecal occult blood (FOB). When there is a high fat content, the stools are pale, and are sometimes described as clay-coloured. Stools that are large in volume are described as bulky. A bad smell is described as foul or offensive.
20.1 Complete the case report. Look at B opposite to help you.

**Case 14**

Physical examination revealed a thin girl with slight pallor. She was not obviously dehydrated. The temperature was 38°C, pulse 100/min, blood pressure 110/80 mmHg. Examination of the rest of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems was normal. The abdomen was not (1) …………………. There was generalized (2) …………………, which was most marked in the right lower (3) ………………… and was associated with (4) ………………… but not (5) …………………. There was no rebound (6) ………………… and no (7) ………………… were felt. (8) ………………… sounds were reduced.

20.2 Match the descriptions of the stools (1–6) with the conditions most likely to cause them (a–f), using your medical knowledge. Look at B opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of stools</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 loose, bloody</td>
<td>a gastric ulcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 loose, pale, bulky</td>
<td>b irritable bowel syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 clay-coloured</td>
<td>c ulcerative colitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 black, tarry</td>
<td>d cholera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 small, hard</td>
<td>e coeliac disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 clear, watery with mucus</td>
<td>f obstructive jaundice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20.3 Match the features (1–7) to the doctor’s questions (a–g). Look at B opposite to help you.

| 1 blood            | a How often do you open your bowels? |
| 2 bowel habit      | b Are you going to the toilet more often than normal? |
| 3 change in bowel habit | c Are the motions hard or loose? |
| 4 bulk             | d Do the motions have an unusual smell? |
| 5 colour           | e What about the appearance of the stools? |
| 6 consistency      | f Have you passed black stools?       |
| 7 offensiveness    | g Is the size or the amount of the stool normal? |

The abdomen can be divided into four quadrants.

**Over to you**

Look back at 20.2 above. In what other conditions that you encounter regularly is the appearance of the stools typical? How would you describe their appearance?
Gynaecology

A The female reproductive system

B Menstruation

A period is the common name for a menstrual (monthly) period. The onset of menstruation is known as menarche. The last menstrual period is commonly abbreviated in doctors' notes: LMP 2/52 ago means the last menstrual period was two weeks ago. The menstrual cycle, or length and frequency of periods, is usually written in the form 4/28, which means lasting 4 days and occurring every 28 days. If a period lasts more than four or five days it can be described as prolonged. The term heavy periods means excessive blood loss – menorrhagia, often with the passage of clots – coagulated blood. The term period pains means dysmenorrhoea, or painful menstruation.

The time when a woman stops menstruating, normally at about the age of 50, is called the menopause or climacteric. In everyday English it is known as the change of life, or simply the change. Symptoms of the menopause include hot flushes – sudden sensation of heat – and night sweats.

C A gynaecological consultation

A gynaecologist is talking to a 30-year-old woman.

Gynaecologist

Are your periods regular?
How often do you get them?
How old were you when you started to get them?
When was your last period?
How long do the periods last usually?
Would you say they are light or heavy?
Do you get clots?
Do you get period pains?
Is there any discharge between the periods?
What colour is it?

Patient

Yes.
Every four weeks.
About 12.
A week ago.
4 or 5 days.
Light.
No.
Not really.
A little.
White.

D Contraception

For women, methods to prevent pregnancy include the oral contraceptive pill (known as the Pill), the diaphragm, and the intrauterine device (IUD) or copper coil. Condoms are available for both men and women.
21.1 Write a simple English phrase for each of the medical terms below using your medical knowledge. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

1. hysterectomy
2. menorrhagia
3. salpingitis
4. cervical biopsy

21.2 Read the conversation between the gynaecologist and the patient in C opposite, and complete the notes about the patient.

menarche:
menstrual cycle:
LMP:
menorrhagia?
dysmenorrhoea?
discharge?

21.3 Now write the questions that the doctor asked. Look at C opposite to help you.

menarche:
menstrual cycle:
LMP:
menorrhagia?
dysmenorrhoea?
discharge?

21.4 Complete the case report. One word is needed twice. Look at B and C opposite to help you.

**Case 15**

A 45-year-old woman had been having (1) ________________ periods lasting for 8 days, with the passage of (2) ________________ , for 9 months. There was no bleeding between (3) ________________ or after intercourse. Her (4) ________________ were not particularly painful. She had not noticed any hot (5) ________________ or night sweats, and her general health had always been good. She had taken the (6) ________________ contraceptive (7) ________________ until a year previously, when a copper (8) ________________ was fitted. She had had a normal pregnancy when she was 25.

diaphragm

![condoms]

copper coil

**Over to you**

What is the attitude to contraception in your country? At what age do you think females should be prescribed contraceptives?
The heart and circulation 1

A

Shortness of breath

Shortness of breath, or 
breathlessness, is 
dyspnoea. At first this is 
called by 

exercise

— physical activity such as 
climbing stairs — but in severe 
cases it may be present even at 

rest. A patient who is breathless 
when lying flat (orthopnoea), 
for example in bed, will tend to 
sleep raised up on two or more pillows. 
The abbreviation SOBEOE stands for 
shortness of breath on exercise (or on 
erexion, or on effort).

Patients say:

I get terribly short of breath climbing stairs.

Doctors can ask:

How many pillows do you sleep on?

B

Heart rhythm

The normal resting heart rate is 65–75 
beats per minute. In athletes it may be 
as low as 40 beats per minute. In 
extreme athletic activity, the heart rate 
can go as high as 200/min. 
The heart rhythm may be regular 
or irregular. In an irregular rhythm 
(arrhythmia), there may be 
early beats which interrupt the 
regular rhythm (premature 
beats); or the rhythm 
may vary with respiration; or 
it may be completely irregular, as in 
fibrillation. When 
patients are aware of irregularity, 
they describe the symptom as 

palpitations.

Case 4

A 22-year-old student was admitted to hospital with a long 
history of heart problems. She had been increasingly tired, 
with shortness of breath on exertion, orthopnoea, and 
palpitations. A mitral valve replacement had been carried 
out 3 years previously and this had stabilized the symptoms 
of heart failure but was followed by episodes (attacks) of 
atrial fibrillation, which had been particularly severe for the 6 
months before admission.

C

Heart failure

Heart failure occurs when the heart is unable to 
maintain sufficient cardiac output — the 
amount of blood pumped by the heart each minute — for 
the body's needs. It may involve 
the left side of the heart, the right side, or both. In left 
heart failure the main symptom is 
breathlessness. The symptoms of right heart failure include 
peripheral oedema (swelling), 
beginning in the feet and ankles. This is known as 
pitting oedema if, when a finger is 
pushed into the swelling, it causes a small depression or pit.
22.1 Complete the conversation based on the case history in B opposite.

Doctor: What seems to be the problem?
Patient: I’ve been getting (1) ____________________
Doctor: How long have you had them?
Patient: For about six months. But I’ve had heart problems for years, with tiredness and
(2) ________________________ of (3) _____________________. In the end I couldn’t walk
more than a hundred metres without having to stop. I had to sleep on three
(4) _______________________. I had a (5) ________________________ replacement three years ago, and that improved things for a while.

22.2 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Two words can be used twice. Look at B and C opposite to help you.

at atrial cardiac heart on pitting premature
output failure oedema fibrillation beats effort rest

22.3 Write the words a patient would use to describe the symptoms below. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.
1 dyspnoea
2 arrhythmia
3 orthopnoea
4 oedema

22.4 Complete the case report. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

**Case 13**
A 60-year-old woman attended her GP’s surgery complaining of breathlessness on (1) _____________________. This had been increasing over the previous eight months until it was producing problems at around 500 metres walking on the level. There was no history of chest pain. She had had several (2) _____________________ of fast (3) _____________________ which lasted 20–30 minutes and were associated with some (4) _____________________ of breath. She had noticed some (5) _____________________ of her ankles by the end of the day. This disappeared overnight.

**Over to you**
How would you manage the treatment of the woman in 22.4 above?
A

Physical examination

Medical examination is normally carried out in four stages: **inspection** (looking), **palpation** (feeling with the hands), **percussion** (tapping with a finger) and **auscultation** (listening with a stethoscope).

Note: The verb is **palpate**; the noun is **palpation** (not **palpitat**ion – see Unit 22).

B

Examining the heart and circulation

Here is an extract from a textbook description of how to examine the cardiovascular system.

Look at the lips, tongue and nails for the blue discoloration of **cyanosis**. Cyanosis may be **central** or **peripheral**. Inspect the hands for **clubbing**. Feel the **radial pulse** at the wrist and note the **rate** (for example 70/min) and **rhythm** (**regular** or **irregular**). The pulse may be **irregular in force** as well as **time**. Check that the other **peripheral pulses** are **present**. Measure the blood pressure, and assess the **jugular venous pressure** (JVP). **Palpate** the chest for the **apex beat** – the normal position is the fifth left **intercostal space**, one centimetre medial to the **middiaphragmatic line**. Feel for any **thrills**. Heart size may be measured by percussion. Listen for **murmurs** and other abnormal sounds, for example **friction rubs**, beginning at the **mitral area**. Murmurs may be **soft** or **loud**. A **harsh** murmur is loud and rough.

Note the time of any murmur in relation to the cardiac cycle. The most common murmurs are:

- **mid-systolic** (in the middle of systole)
- **pan-systolic** (lasting for the whole of systole)
- **early diastolic**
- **mid-diastolic**
- **late diastolic** (pre-systolic)

Continue by listening at the tricuspid, aortic and pulmonary areas.
23.1 Complete the table with words from A opposite. Put a stress mark in front of the stressed syllable in each word. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auscultate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inspect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palpate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percuss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.2 Put the steps for examining the heart and circulation in order, according to the four-stage system. Look at A opposite to help you.

a Measure the heart size.
b Are there any murmurs?
c Feel the radial pulse.
d Look for clubbing.
e Locate the apex beat.
f Note any thrills.

23.3 A doctor is presenting the case of a 43-year-old woman at a meeting in the Cardiology Department. Complete the text of her presentation. Look at B opposite to help you.

On examination she was pyrexial with a temperature of 38.5. She was short of breath. Her pulse was variable between 100 and 180 and was irregular in time and (1) ................... .

Her blood pressure was 130/80 and her JVP was up 5 centimetres showing normal movement with respiration. Her peripheral (2) ................... were all present and there was no (3) ................... or (4) ................... cyanosis. Her apex (5) ................... was displaced to the anterior axillary line but still in the fifth intercostal (6) ................... .

Her heart sounds were very interesting. When she was initially examined it was noted that she had pan-systolic and mid-diastolic (7) ................... , heard best at the apex. When she was examined some hours later, there was a harsh pericardial friction (8) ................... all over the precordium. Our diagnosis at that time was of mitral stenosis and incompetence with a recent onset of pericarditis and atrial fibrillation.

**Over to you**

*How many signs of heart disease can you find in B opposite? Can you add any signs of heart disease to the list?*
Infections

Fever

A medical student has made some language notes on a case report.

**Case 45**

A 24-year-old man presented with a fever which he had had for three days. On the third day he had had a severe attack of fever with sweating and rigors. The only past history of relevance was hepatitis four years earlier and glandular fever (infection with Epstein-Barr virus) at the age of 18 years. He had returned from Africa three weeks previously.

- **fever** = pyrexia (also remember PUO – pyrexia of unknown origin)
- **fever** also known as temperature – I’ve got a temperature.
- **adjectives** = febrile, pyrexial
- **opposites** = afebrile, apyrexial

Some symptoms of fever:
- sweating
- rigors (severe shivering and sensation of coldness, also known as chills)

Microorganisms

Infections differ from other diseases in a number of aspects:

- Most importantly, they are caused by living microorganisms – such as viruses or bacteria – that can usually be identified, thus establishing the aetiology early in the illness. Many of these organisms, including all bacteria, are sensitive to antibiotics and most infections are potentially curable, unlike many non-infectious degenerative and chronic diseases.

- Communicability is another factor which differentiates infections from non-infectious diseases. Transmission of pathogenic organisms to other people, directly or indirectly, may lead to an outbreak or epidemic.

- Finally, many infections are preventable by hygienic measures, by vaccines (especially live attenuated vaccines such as rabies vaccine) or by drug prophylaxis (for example, chloroquine to prevent malaria).

Microorganisms include bacteria, viruses, fungi, protozoa (such as the parasite that causes malaria). Another general word for these pathogens is microbes. Patients often refer to microbes as germs or bugs.

Microorganisms include bacteria, viruses, fungi, protozoa (such as the parasite that causes malaria). Another general word for these pathogens is microbes. Patients often refer to microbes as germs or bugs.

Notice the common expressions for acquiring an infectious disease:

- Could he have caught the flu bug that’s going round.

Source and spread of infection

Here is an extract from a medical textbook.

Infection may originate from the patient (endogenous), usually from skin, nasopharynx or bowel, or from outside sources (exogenous), often another person who may be either suffering from an infection or carrying a pathogenic microorganism. Carriers are usually healthy and may harbour the organism in the throat (for example, diphtheria), bowel (salmonella), or blood (hepatitis B or HIV). Non-human sources of infection include water (e.g. cholera), milk (e.g. tuberculosis), food (e.g. botulism), animals (e.g. rabies), birds (e.g. psittacosis) and also the soil (e.g. legionella – Legionnaires’ disease).

The incubation period is the period between the invasion of the tissues by pathogens and the appearance of clinical features of infection. The period of infectivity is the time that the patient is infectious to others.
24.1 Match the two parts of the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1 1988 saw the UK launch of live attenuated
2 Chickenpox (varicella) is a common infectious
3 Rabies has an incubation
4 The patient remained febrile
5 He was admitted with a four-day history of influenza-type symptoms of fever with
6 Quite a proportion of patients who recover from hepatitis B
7 The central part of Africa is in the midst of an epidemic
8 Measles (rubeola) is most
9 Lyme disease is caused by transmission
10 PUO stands for

a period ranging from four days to many months.
b rigors, myalgia and general malaise.
c become carriers of the virus.
d infectious during the catarrhal stage.
e disease of childhood.
f of AIDS.
g of B. burgdorferi from animal to man by ixodid ticks.
h with peaks of temperature of 39.5°C.
i pyrexia of unknown origin.
j measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccine.

24.2 Complete the case report on the patient in A opposite. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

Case 45

On examination, he looked unwell. His pulse rate was 100/minute. He had a palpable spleen. The combination of (1) ...................... and (2) ...................... in a patient who has recently returned from Africa strongly suggests a diagnosis of malaria. The (3) ...................... period is usually 10–14 days. In this case, the patient admitted he had not been taking (4) ...................... regularly. The diagnosis was confirmed by the presence of (5) ...................... in his blood film.

24.3 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1 An infection which can be treated successfully with antibiotics is ...................... .
2 Another word for an epidemic is an ...................... .
3 Bacteria and viruses are examples of ...................... .
4 Someone whose temperature is normal is ...................... .
5 The common infection with Epstein–Barr virus is known as ...................... ...................... .

Over to you

Cases of HIV infection reach record high in the UK

The Times, 25 November 2005

Describe the situation with regard to HIV in your country. What measures are being taken to control it?
Mental illness

Psychiatric disorders
Psychiatric disorders can be divided into organic and functional. Dementia is a mental disorder due to organic brain disease. The commonest form of dementia is that associated with old age: senile dementia. Disorders in which there is no obvious pathology or anatomical change in an organ are termed functional. These are described below.

Substance abuse
Abuse of a substance means using it in a way that is harmful. The commonest forms of substance abuse are alcoholism and drug abuse.

Affective disorders
Here is an extract from a medical textbook.

- Affect and mood are similar in meaning and refer to the emotions (for example, happiness or sadness). Affect tends to be used for temporary emotions, and is expressed through manner of speaking, facial expression, or behaviour. Mood is used to refer to a more permanent emotional state. The most common form of affective disorder is depression, the symptoms of which are:
  - poor appetite or significant weight loss
  - sleep disturbance (for example, insomnia – inability to sleep)
  - fatigue (loss of energy)

- Psychomotor agitation (excessive movement and thought) or psychomotor retardation (slowing of movement and thought)
- Loss of interest in stimulating activities
- decreased ability to think and concentrate
- feeling that one is of no value to others, or that one has done something wrong
- recurrent thoughts of death or suicide.

Five, or possibly four, of the above symptoms, occurring nearly every day for at least two weeks, constitute a major depression.

Neurotic and stress-related disorders
An example of neurotic disorder is obsessive compulsive disorder. An obsession is an idea that is so persistent that it interferes with the patient’s life. A compulsion is an obsessive idea that forces the patient to act even though they recognize that it is unnecessary. A common form of this is compulsive washing of the hands. Stress is a feeling of being unable to cope. It can lead to anxiety or fear of problems. A sudden attack of anxiety is called a panic attack.

Other types of functional disorder
These include:
- Behavioural syndromes associated with physiological disturbance (such as eating disorders)
- Disorders of adult personality and behaviour (for example, personality disorder)
- Mental retardation – delayed mental development
- Schizophrenia and other disorders in which there are delusions (false beliefs).
25.1 Complete the table with words from A, C, D and E opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>affective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anxious</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behavioural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demented</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disturbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suicidal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25.2 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Two words can be used twice. Look at B, C and E opposite to

| behavioural | abuse                |
| eating      | disturbance          |
| major       | retardation          |
| mental      | disorder             |
| personality | depression           |
| psychomotor | syndrome             |
| sleep       |                      |
| substance   |                      |

25.3 Complete the sentences. Look at A, C, D and E opposite to help you.

1. The way a person behaves is his or her ________________.
2. A persistent emotional state is a ________________.
3. A sudden attack of anxiety is a ________________.
4. The form of dementia associated with ageing is called ________________.
5. A disorder which is not associated with pathological changes is ________________.
6. An idea which forces a patient to repeat unnecessary actions is a ________________.

25.4 Which symptoms of depression was this patient suffering from? Look at C opposite to help you.

**Case 41**

A 56-year-old woman presented to her GP complaining of increasing tiredness over the past few months. She had lost interest in most things. She was sleeping poorly and tended to wake up early, but denied any suicidal tendencies. She was thirsty and was passing urine more often. She was eating normally and her weight was steady.

**Over to you**

Do you think the woman in 25.4 above was suffering from major depressive illness? Give your reasons.
A

The nervous system 1

Sensory loss

The central nervous system controls the sensory and motor functions of the body. Diseases of this system therefore lead to loss of some of these functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Loss</th>
<th>Other symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hearing</td>
<td>deafness</td>
<td>buzzing or ringing in the ear (tinnitus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sight</td>
<td>blindness</td>
<td>double vision (diplopia) blurring (loss of visual acuity – clarity of vision)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensation (feeling)</td>
<td>numbness (anaesthesia)</td>
<td>tingling or pins and needles (paraesthesiae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balance</td>
<td>unsteadiness (ataxia)</td>
<td>dizziness (vertigo)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: There are no common words for loss of, or conditions relating to, taste and smell.

B

Motor loss

Motor loss symptoms and signs include:

- weakness – loss of power
- paralysis – complete loss of power
- tremor – involuntary rhythmic movement, especially of the hands
- abnormal gait – unusual manner of walking.

Speech may also be affected, for example with hoarseness – a rough, deep voice as in vocal cord paralysis. Slurred speech means poor articulation, as in cerebellar disease.

C

Loss of consciousness

Patients may describe sudden loss of consciousness in a number of ways:

- I passed out. I had a blackout. I fainted.
- I had a fit. seizure. convulsion.

Fit, seizure and convulsion are all used to refer to violent involuntary movements, as in epilepsy.

Doctors may say: When did you lose consciousness?

Here is a passage from a textbook on the causes of loss of consciousness.

The principal differential diagnosis is between an epileptic fit and a syncopal attack, or fainting. Syncopal is a sudden loss of consciousness due to temporary failure of the cerebral circulation. Syncope is distinguished from a seizure principally by the circumstances in which the event occurs. For example, syncope usually occurs whilst standing, under situations of severe stress, or in association with an arrhythmia. Sometimes a convolution and urinary incontinence – loss of control of the bladder – occur even in a syncopal attack. Thus, neither of these is specific for an epileptic attack. The key is to establish the presence or absence of prodromal symptoms, or symptoms that occur immediately before the attack. Syncopal episodes are usually preceded by symptoms of dizziness and light-headedness. In epilepsy, people may get a warning, known as an aura, that an attack is going to happen.

Note: The noun convulsion is often used in plural form – He had convulsions as a child.
26.1 Complete the table with words from A, B and C opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conscious</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deaf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dizzy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light-headed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsteady</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.2 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>double</th>
<th>acuity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>epileptic</td>
<td>attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prodromal</td>
<td>incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syncopal</td>
<td>symptom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urinary</td>
<td>vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visual</td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.3 A doctor is trying to determine the cause of loss of consciousness in a 52-year-old man. Complete the doctor’s questions. Look at C opposite and at the table in 26.1 above to help you.

Did you lose (1) .................................. suddenly or gradually?
Did you get a (2) ................................ of the attack?
What were you doing before you (3) ................................. out?
Were you worried or under any (4) ................................ at the time?
Did you feel (5) ................................ or (6) ................................ before the attack?
Did you lose (7) ................................ of your bladder?
Did your wife notice any (8) ................................ movements while you were unconscious?

Over to you

Smells can diagnose Alzheimer’s

The Times, 14 December 2004

According to a newspaper article, research has shown that inability to identify ten particular smells is an early sign of Alzheimer’s disease. What do you think the ten smells are?
The nervous system 2

A. The motor system

Examination of the motor system should include assessment of the following:

- **muscle bulk** (amount of muscle tissue). Look for signs of **wasting** (muscle atrophy)
- **muscle tone** (amount of tension in a muscle when it is relaxed). Tone can be increased (spasticity), or decreased (flaccidity)
- **muscle power** (strength)
- **coordination** (the ability to use several muscles at the same time to perform complex actions)
- **gait** (the manner of walking)
- **reflexes** (see B below)
- **involuntary movements**, for example a tic or a tremor.

Here is an extract from a case report about a patient with a tremor.

**Case 80**

On examination, her face showed little or no **expression**. There was a tremor **affecting** mainly her right hand. She had **generally increased** muscle tone. Power, reflexes, coordination and sensation were **within normal limits**. Examination of her gait showed that she was slow to start walking and had difficulty stopping and turning.

B. Tendon reflexes

Examination of the nervous system normally includes testing the tendon reflexes, for example the knee jerks, with a tendon hammer (also known as a reflex hammer). The reflexes may be absent (0), diminished (-), normal (+) or brisk (+++). The plantar reflexes are also checked. The normal plantar response is a **downgoing** (↓) movement (plantar flexion) of the big toe. An **upgoing** (↑) toe (extensor or Babinski response) is abnormal.

C. Coma

Coma is unconsciousness with a reduced response to external stimuli.

Doctors say:  

**The patient is in a coma.**  

The **Glasgow Coma Scale** (GCS) score is calculated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eye opening</th>
<th>Verbal response</th>
<th>Motor response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spontaneous</td>
<td>Oriented</td>
<td>Obey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To speech</td>
<td>Confused</td>
<td>Localizes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To pain</td>
<td>Inappropriate</td>
<td>Withdraws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>Incomprehensible</td>
<td>Flexion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Extension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The patient is **comatose.**
27.1 Complete the table with words from A and B opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>absence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diminution</td>
<td>flaccid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>spastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wasted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27.2 A doctor is giving instructions to a patient during examination of the motor system. Identify what the doctor is assessing in each case. Look at A opposite to help you.

1 I’d like you to relax. I’m just going to move your arm up and down.
2 Can I see your hands?
3 Now, I’m going to straighten your arm out. Try to stop me.
4 Can you touch my finger with yours and then touch your nose? Good. Now do it again with your eyes closed.

27.3 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite and at the table in 27.1 above to help you.

1 A ................. hand droops limply to form a right angle with the wrist.
2 ................. reflexes are reflexes that are stronger than normal.
3 Muscle ................. means the muscle is reduced in bulk.
4 A tic is a form of ................. movement.
5 A key is often used to test the ................. response.
6 His ................. was poor; he could not perform rapid alternating movements.
7 A ................. is used to test reflexes.
8 When something is ................., it is less than normal.

27.4 A patient is brought to A&E in coma. When her name is spoken, she opens her eyes but she does not answer questions, or obey instructions. What is her GCS score?

The plantar reflex

Over to you
Can you name six tendon reflexes?
What is your diagnosis for the patient in A opposite?
Neoplasms
A neoplasm is an abnormal new growth of tissue. Malignant neoplasms – cancers – are likely to spread and cause serious illness or death. Benign neoplasms do not spread and are less harmful.

When speaking to patients, doctors generally say growth or tumour.

You have a small growth tumour in the bowel.

A lump or swelling is a collection of tissue or fluid which is visible or palpable – can be palpated or felt with the fingers. A lump may be due to a neoplasm, but there are other causes such as inflammation or fluid accumulation.

Patients say:  
I have a lump in my left breast.

Doctors say:  
There was a firm, palpable mass in the liver.

Malignant tumours are characterized by rapid growth and invasiveness. The tumour may invade local tissues or may spread to distant parts of the body (metastasis). Neoplasms which are the result of metastasis are called secondaries, as opposed to the original tumour which is the primary.

We have the results of the scan back now and I’m afraid they show that you have a small growth in the prostate. Fortunately, it appears to be at an early stage and there is no sign of spread. So if we remove it, there is every chance of a complete cure.

Note: To invade (verb) is to enter and spread throughout a part of the body, and this process is invasion (noun). If a tumour is described as invasive, it has the ability to spread.

Symptoms and signs of malignancy
The symptoms of malignant disease may be related to the size and location of the tumour. For example, a space-occupying lesion in the brain causes raised intracranial pressure and symptoms such as headache, vomiting, or visual disturbance. Tumours of the colon may obstruct (block) the lumen and cause change in bowel habit. Other possible symptoms of malignancy include bleeding, pain, and weight loss.

Case 55
A 33-year-old man presented to his GP complaining of a painless lump on the right side of his neck, which had been present for about two months and was enlarging. He had been feeling generally unwell and had lost about 5 kg in weight. He was also complaining of night sweats. He had no significant past medical history.

Treatment of tumours
A tumour can sometimes be completely removed or excised by surgery. If this is not possible, for example if it has already metastasized to other parts of the body, it may be possible to destroy it by radiotherapy or by chemotherapy (see Unit 42). When a cure is not possible, palliative treatment is given, which is only intended to relieve symptoms.
28.1 Complete the table with words from A, B and C opposite and related forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun(s)</th>
<th>Adjective(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cure</td>
<td>excision</td>
<td>curative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>growing</td>
<td>invasive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palliate</td>
<td>palliation</td>
<td>obstructive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swell</td>
<td>spread</td>
<td>palpable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>spreading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>swelling, swollen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28.2 The notes below are about the patient described in B opposite. Use them to put the sentences (1–9) in the correct order, to make the next paragraph of the case report. Use Appendix II on page XX if you need help with the abbreviations.

1 Examination of the central nervous system was normal.
2 His mouth and throat were normal.
3 There was a smooth, firm 3 x 4 cm mass in the right supraclavicular fossa.
4 His cardiovascular and respiratory systems were normal.
5 On abdominal examination, there was a mass palpable 3 cm below the left costal margin.
6 On examination, his temperature was 37.8°C.
7 There were enlarged lymph nodes in both axillae and inguinal areas.
8 His pulse rate was 100/min regular and blood pressure 112/66.

28.3 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1 Distant ................. of tumour cells is known as metastasis.
2 Many symptoms of cancer, such as difficulty swallowing, are due to ..........................
3 The opposite of painful is ..........................
4 A ......................... neoplasm is called a cancer.
5 Tumours which do not invade or metastasize are ..........................
6 ......................... tumours are those which result from the spread of a primary.
7 If a cure is not possible, ......................... treatment should be given.
8 A ......................... liver suggests metastasis.

Over.to you
The most likely clinical diagnosis in the patient (described in B opposite and 28.2 above) is lymphoma. How would you explain his condition to him?
29 Pregnancy and childbirth

A Childbirth

The expected date of delivery (EDD) is the date on which a woman is expected to give birth to the child she is carrying (pregnant with). It is calculated by adding 280 days or 40 weeks to the first day of the last menstrual period (LMP). Childbirth is also referred to by doctors as parturition. Delivery is the process of helping the child to be born. A spontaneous vaginal delivery (SVD) is a normal delivery. If there are complications, the baby may be delivered by caesarean section (surgically removed).

A full-term pregnancy is 40 weeks, divided into three trimesters. A baby who is born before this is premature, and one born after 40 weeks is postmature. A baby who is born dead, for example because the umbilical cord is around its neck, is stillborn. A pregnancy may end before term spontaneously, with a miscarriage (spontaneous abortion), or be deliberately terminated with an induced abortion (termination of pregnancy).

Note: the verb induce means to cause something to happen.

B Labour

The process by which the fetus and placenta are pushed out of the uterus is called labour. It is divided into four stages. Some words which are combined with labour are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>premature</th>
<th>prolonged</th>
<th>spontaneous</th>
<th>induced</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C Presentation and lie

Fetal lie is the position of the fetus in the uterus. The normal lie is longitudinal, and the abnormal lie is transverse. Fetal presentation refers to ‘the part of the fetus which occupies the centre of the pelvic canal and which the examining finger feels on vaginal examination’ (Butterworth). The normal presentation is with the head (vertex presentation). Breech presentation means the buttocks are presenting (breech is an old word for buttocks). Abnormal presentations may require delivery with forceps.
29.1 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1 A baby that is born a week before the EDD is ____________________.
2 A ____________________ of pregnancy may be necessary for medical reasons.
3 The first three months of pregnancy are known as the first ____________________.
4 Fetal distress in the first stage of ____________________ is an indication for caesarean
   ____________________. 
5 It was a breech ____________________ and delivery was by forceps.
6 A ____________________ is another term for a spontaneous abortion.
7 The ____________________ was wound tightly around the baby’s neck and it was unfortunately
   ____________________. 

29.2 Complete the table with words from A opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abort</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deliver</td>
<td>induction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miscarry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>termination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29.3 Dr Bennett, an SHO, is presenting a patient at a weekly meeting in the obstetric unit of a
hospital. Complete the presentation with the correct forms of verbs from 29.2 above.

This is Clara Davis. She came to the antenatal clinic at nine weeks. In her past obstetric
history, she had a pregnancy when she was 18, which was (1) ____________________ and
another one a year later, which spontaneously (2) ____________________. Since then she has had
three pregnancies. In the first, the baby was (3) ____________________ normally at 40 weeks.
In the second, she had an (4) ____________________ of labour at 39 weeks because of fetal
distress. The third baby (5) ____________________ as a breech and was (6) ____________________ by
caesarean section.

Over to you

**Romanian woman gives birth at 66**

A 66-year-old woman is believed to have become the world’s oldest mother
yesterday, after giving birth to a girl.

_The Guardian, 17 January 2005_

What is the oldest and youngest age for giving birth that you have known? In your opinion,
should assisted conception be available for anyone who wants it? If not, what do you think
the limits should be?
The respiratory system

A. Cough

Cough is a common symptom of upper respiratory tract infection (URTI) and lung disease. A cough may be productive, where the patient coughs up sputum, or non-productive, where there is no sputum. A productive cough is often described as loose and a non-productive cough as dry. Sputum (or phlegm) may be clear or white (mucoid), yellow due to the presence of pus (purulent), or blood-stained (as in haemoptysis).

A doctor is examining a patient who is complaining of a cough.

Doctor: How long have you had the cough?
Mr Hamilton: Oh, for years.
Doctor: Do you smoke?
Mr Hamilton: I used to smoke heavily, but I gave up a year ago.
Doctor: Do you cough up any phlegm?
Mr Hamilton: Yes.
Doctor: What colour is it?
Mr Hamilton: Usually yellow.
Doctor: Have you ever noticed any blood in it?
Mr Hamilton: No.
Doctor: Any problems with your breathing?
Mr Hamilton: Yes, I get very short of breath. I have to stop halfway up the stairs to get my breath back.

The doctor writes in the patient’s case notes: c/o dyspnoea & cough c. purulent sputum for years. No haemoptysis.

Note: The noun phlegm is pronounced /ˈfleɪm/.

B. Auscultation

The doctor is examining Mr Hamilton’s chest.

Take deep breaths in and out through your mouth. Good. Now say ‘ninety-nine’.

Listening to the chest with a stethoscope may reveal the presence of sounds, apart from the normal breath sounds. There are two main kinds of added sounds:

- crackles, which sound like hairs being rubbed together and suggest the presence of fluid in the lungs
- wheezes, which are more musical sounds, like whistling, and indicate narrowing of the airways. The sound of an asthma patient’s breathing is also called wheeze.

The sound heard when the pleural surfaces are inflamed, as in pleurisy, is called a pleural rub.

The doctor asks Mr Hamilton to say ‘ninety-nine’ to check vocal resonance, which may be increased (as in pneumonia), or decreased (as in pneumothorax).

After examining Mr Hamilton, the doctor adds to his notes:

OE Chest: early inspiratory crackles both lung bases + expiratory wheeze
30.1 Make word combinations using a word from each box. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

- blood-breath
- pleural
- productive
- vocal
- cough
- rub
- stained
- resonance
- sounds

30.2 Rewrite the questions, using words that are better known to patients. Look at A opposite to help you.

1. Is your cough productive?
2. What colour is the sputum?
3. Is it ever purulent?
4. Have you ever had haemoptysis?
5. Do you suffer from dyspnoea?

30.3 Are the following statements true or false? Give reasons for your answers, using your medical knowledge and A and B opposite to help you.

1. A patient who has a loose cough produces phlegm.
2. Crackles are heard when the airways are narrowed.
3. A patient who has a non-productive cough produces sputum.
4. Wheezes are typical of pleurisy.
5. A pleural rub is a sign of asthma.

Over to you

Use the notes below to write a case report, and add your provisional diagnosis of the case. Use Appendix II on page 131 if you need help with the abbreviations.

Begin: 'A 36-year-old man complained of sudden right-sided chest pain...'

36 yr old ♂
c/o sudden R chest pain with s.o.b. while watching TV
pain ↑ by deep breaths and coughing
s.o.b. persisted over the 4 hours from its onset to his arrival in A&E
s. non-productive cough
FH & FH nil relevant
3/52 holiday in Australia 3/52 previously

- T 37.4°C
- RR 24/min
- JVP ↑ 5 cm
- BP 110/64
- P 128/min

- RS chest expansion ↓ because of pain
- pleural rub R lower zone posteriorly
- no other added sounds
- Otherwise NAD

What is your diagnosis?
The skin 1

Some types of skin lesion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medical term</th>
<th>Common word</th>
<th>Features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>macule</td>
<td>spot</td>
<td>not raised above the surface of the skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papule</td>
<td>spot</td>
<td>raised above the surface of the skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nodule</td>
<td>lump</td>
<td>a large papule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vesicle</td>
<td>small blister</td>
<td>filled with fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bulla</td>
<td>blister</td>
<td>a large vesicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pustule</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>filled with pus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crust</td>
<td>scab</td>
<td>dried blood etc. on the surface of the skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scales</td>
<td>scales</td>
<td>a thin layer of epidermis separated from the skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cicatrix (plural: cicatrices)</td>
<td>scar</td>
<td>a mark on the skin after healing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naevus</td>
<td>birthmark</td>
<td>a coloured skin lesion present at birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fleshy naevus</td>
<td>mole</td>
<td>a raised brown naevus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verruca</td>
<td>wart</td>
<td>a nodule produced by HPV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furuncle</td>
<td>boil</td>
<td>a large pustule, or skin abscess</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The liquid (often yellow) formed as a result of infection is pus. If a lesion is pustular, it is filled with pus.

Rashes

A single skin lesion can be regular or irregular in shape. When there are many (multiple) lesions, especially macules or papules, the result is a rash, (or spots in common language); for example the rash of an infectious disease such as rubella. A rash is said to erupt, or break out.

My little boy has broken out in spots in a rash all over his body.

The following features of a skin lesion are usually noted:
- location
- size
- shape
- colour
- type.

For a rash, note also:
- distribution (widespread – on many parts of the body; or localized – on one part only)
- grouping (scattered – more or less evenly spread out, or in clusters – small groups).
31.1 Complete the description of *herpes zoster* (shingles) by replacing the medical words in brackets with ordinary English words. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

(1) ________________ (herpes zoster) usually starts with pain and soreness. Then red
(2) ________________ (macules) appear that develop into groups of (3) ____________________________
(vesicles) over a particular area on one side of the body. In most patients, new (4) _______________
(lesions) continue to appear for 3 to 5 days. The (5) ____________________________ (vesicles)
become (6) ____________________________ (pustular) and then form (7) ____________________________
(crusts). In severe cases, there may be (8) ____________________________ (cicatrices) afterwards.

*BMJ* 2005; 331: 148 Amended with permission from the BMJ Publishing Group.

31.2 Read the description of the rash of rubella and complete the notes. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

The spots are scattered pink macules which appear first behind the ears and on the forehead. The rash spreads rapidly, first to the trunk and then to the limbs.

location and distribution:

- grouping:
- type of lesion:
- colour:

31.3 Complete the notes for the rash in the photograph, and suggest a diagnosis. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

location and distribution:

- grouping:
- type of lesion:
- colour:

31.4 Complete the notes for the lesion in the photograph, and suggest a diagnosis. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

location and distribution:

- grouping:
- type of lesion:
- colour:

---

**Over to you**

What types of rashes are common in your country? Is there any reason why they are common?
The skin 2

Injuries to the skin

Here is an extract from a medical website.

Mechanical injuries to the skin are divided into those caused by a blunt force, such as a punch from a fist, and those caused by a sharp force, such as a knife.

Injuries from blunt forces

- An abrasion (also called a graze or a scratch) is a superficial (surface) injury involving only the epidermis, which has been removed by friction. A scratch is linear, as in fingernail scratches, whereas a graze involves a wider area, as in abrasions caused by dragging part of the body over a rough surface.
- A contusion (also called a bruise) is an injury that occurs when blood vessels in the skin are damaged.

- A laceration (also called a tear) is a wound involving both the dermis and epidermis. It is usually distinguished from penetrating or incised wounds by its irregular edges and relative lack of bleeding.

Injuries from sharp forces

- An incised wound (also called a cut) is a break in the skin where the length of the wound on the surface is greater than the depth of the wound – for example, a wound caused by a razor blade.
- The depth of a penetrating wound is greater than the superficial length of the wound – for example, a stab wound caused by a knife.

(Amended with permission from the BMJ Publishing Group)

Case report

Read the case report and compare it with the illustration.

Case

A 9-year-old boy presented to the Accident and Emergency department after he stumbled and fell while running in a wood. He had received a blow to the head from a rock and had been scratched by bushes. On examination, a vertical laceration 1 cm long was noted on the bridge of his nose just right of the midline. There were a number of superficial scratches on the right side of his forehead. His right upper lid was mildly confused.

(BMJ 1996; 316: 1364
Amended with permission from the BMJ Publishing Group)

Sores

The word sore is a popular term for many different types of skin lesion, especially infected lesions. A pressure sore is a skin ulcer caused by pressure, for example the pressure of lying in bed for long periods (also known as a bedsore, or decubitus ulcer). A cold sore is a lesion caused by herpes simplex.

Note: The adjective sore means painful, for example a sore throat.
32.1 Write the corresponding medical terms for the ordinary English words and say what kind of force is involved. Look at A opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common word</th>
<th>Medical term</th>
<th>Type of force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bruise</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graze</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scratch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stab wound</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.2 Choose the correct words to complete the description of the injuries shown in the illustration. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

There are (1) ___________________ (scratches/grazes) above the left eyebrow and on the left side of the neck, a (2) ________________ (contusion/laceration) to the left side of the lower lip and (3) ________________ (cuts/tears) to the left cheek.

32.3 Write a description of the injuries shown in the illustration. Look at A and B opposite and at 32.2 above to help you.

32.4 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1 Frequent changes of position are necessary in the immobile patient to prevent the development of a pressure ___________________.
2 He had several ___________________ wounds in the abdomen from the knife.
3 He was knocked unconscious by a heavy ___________________ to the head.
4 The wounds were only ___________________ and required no treatment.

Over to you

The police have asked you to examine a man who has been involved in a fight in a restaurant. What type of injuries would you expect to find, and how might they have been caused?
The urinary system

Urinary symptoms

Urine is formed in the kidneys and stored in the bladder until it is passed (or voided).

Patients may say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Doctor</th>
<th>Mr Jones</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have some pain when I</td>
<td>pass water. pec.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Doctors may say:

Are you having any trouble with your waterworks?

Doctor: Are you having any trouble with your waterworks?
Mr Jones: Well, I do seem to have to go to the toilet more often than I used to.
Doctor: How often is that?
Mr Jones: It depends, but sometimes it's every hour or even more often.
Doctor: What about at night? Do you have to get up at night?
Mr Jones: Yes. Nearly always two or three times.
Doctor: Do you get any burning or pain when you pass water?
Mr Jones: No, not usually.
Doctor: Do you have any trouble getting started?
Mr Jones: No.
Doctor: Is the stream normal? I mean is there still a good strong flow?
Mr Jones: Perhaps not quite so good as it used to be.
Doctor: Do you ever lose control of your bladder? Any leaking or dribbling?
Mr Jones: Well, perhaps a little dribbling from time to time.
Doctor: Have you ever passed blood in the urine?
Mr Jones: No, never.

Common urinary symptoms and their definitions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequency</th>
<th>frequent passing of urine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dysuria</td>
<td>burning or scalding pain in the urethra when passing urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nocturia</td>
<td>urination at night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urgency</td>
<td>urgent need to pass urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hesitancy</td>
<td>difficulty starting to pass urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urinary incontinence</td>
<td>involuntary passing of urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haematuria</td>
<td>macroscopic blood in the urine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Urinalysis

Urinalysis is the analysis of urine. Simple screening tests of the urine are carried out with reagent strips, for example Clinistix for the detection of glucose. More detailed tests are carried out in a laboratory on a specimen of urine. Typical specimens are a midstream specimen (MSU) and a catheter specimen (CSU). Microscopic examination may reveal the presence of red blood cells, pus cells, or casts. Casts are solid bodies formed by protein or cells.

Plus signs are used in case notes to indicate abnormal findings. A small amount (+) is described as a trace. For a large amount (+++), the words gross or marked can be used, for example gross haematuria. When there is nothing, the word nil is common.

| sugar | nil |
| protein | + |
| blood   | +++ |

There was no sugar, a trace of protein and gross haematuria.
33.1 Look at the conversation in A opposite and complete the notes about Mr Jones. Use medical terms where possible.

\[c/o (1) \text{.................................. and (2) .................................. for 1 yr.}\]
\[No (3) \text{........................................ or (4) ..................................}\]
\[(5) \text{........................................... a little weaker.}\]
\[No incontinence apart from occasional. (6) \text{..................................}\]

33.2 Match the patients’ descriptions of their symptoms (1–7) with the medical terms (a–g).
Look at A opposite to help you.

1 'I have to pee every half hour or so.'
2 'I get a scalding pain when I pass water.'
3 'I have to get up several times to pass water at night.'
4 'I have to rush to go to the toilet.'
5 'I have trouble getting started.'
6 'I can't hold my water.'
7 'I passed some blood in my urine.'

a dysuria
b frequency
c haematuria
d hesitancy
e nocturia
f urgency
g incontinence

33.3 Write the doctor’s questions for each of the symptoms in 33.2 above. Look at A opposite to help you. You will need to think of your own question for urgency.

33.4 Describe the findings of the laboratory report in words. Look at B opposite to help you.

- blood +
- protein +++
- casts nil

Over to you
What is your provisional diagnosis for Mr Jones?
Basic investigations

A Ophthalmoscopy
An ophthalmoscope allows the doctor to examine all parts of the eye: the iris, lens, retina and optic disc. For best results, the examination is done with dimmed, or lowered, lights to allow the pupil to maximally dilate or widen. A topical mydriatic solution may be applied to the eye to aid dilation. The patient is then asked to fixate on a target for the duration of the test.

B Blood pressure

A sphygmomanometer

A stethoscope

A stethoscope is used to hear the sound of blood rushing back through the artery. The first thumping sound is the systolic blood pressure (SBP). When the thumping sound is no longer heard, that’s the diastolic blood pressure (DBP).

C Taking blood
During venipuncture, the phlebotomist, a technician who takes blood, inserts a needle into a vein and withdraws blood into a specimen tube, which is sent to the haematology laboratory for analysis. Usually the phlebotomist can find a vein in the inner part of the elbow, the antecubital fossa, that is easily accessible. She may apply a tourniquet – a tight band – above the site, or the patient may be asked to clench their hand to make a fist, in order to make the vein more prominent. Afterwards, the patient may be asked to press lightly on a dressing, usually a piece of gauze, to help the blood to clot and to prevent swelling and a haematoma (a black and blue mark, or a bruise) where the vein was punctured.

Note: A bruise is a specific mark. Bruising can be used to describe a number of bruises or a larger area – The patient exhibited bruising on the right forearm.
34.1 A doctor is talking to a patient during an ophthalmoscopy. Match the underlined expressions she uses (1–4) to expressions with similar meanings from A opposite (a–d).

Right, Mr Gold, because you’ve been having these headaches I’m going to have a look at your eyes, particularly the back of your eye – the retina. I’m going to put (1) a couple of drops in your eye, (2) which will make it easier for me to see the retina. After a few minutes you may find your vision a bit blurry. This will wear off after about an hour.

(3) I need to get rid of as much external light as possible. This means closing the blinds.

Now, I'd like you to (4) look straight ahead at that clock. This takes a few minutes and your eyes might feel a bit tired so you can blink if you need to. I don't want you to look at me, look at the clock.

a) the examination is done with dimmed lights
b) a topical mydriatic solution
c) to aid dilation
d) fixate on a target

34.2 Complete the instructions. Look at B opposite to help you.

1 Wrap the ................ around the patient's upper arm.
2 Place the ................ over the area of the brachial artery. Raise the patient's arm so that the brachial artery is at the same height as the heart.
3 Close the valve on the ..................  .
4 Pump up the pressure to at least 150 mmHg. Open the ................ a little and slowly deflate the cuff while listening and watching the pressure ..................  .
5 The first sound you hear is the flow of blood through the brachial artery. The value on the gauge at that point is the ....................  ..................  ..................  .
6 Continue listening while you slowly ................ the cuff.
7 The .................. blood pressure is measured when the sound completely disappears.

34.3 Complete the text. Look at C opposite to help you.

(1) .................. are specially trained in taking blood. They are skilled at (2) .................. – puncturing the vein to take a blood sample. The wrist, hand and foot can be used but more often a vein in the inner part of the elbow is used. If it is difficult to locate a suitable vein, the patient may be asked to make a (3) .................. , or a (4) .................. may be applied on the upper arm to make the vein more apparent. Afterwards, a (5) .................. is applied and the patient is asked to press gently. This helps to stop the bleeding and prevent (6) .................. at the site. It is important that (7) .................. are labelled correctly before they are sent to the haematology (8) .................. , where a full blood count or other investigations will be carried out.

Over to you
Practise talking a patient through an investigation that you carry out regularly.
35

Laboratory tests

A Microbiology request form

A Microbiology request form uses a number of abbreviations for specimen types (see Appendix II on page 131 for an explanation of these abbreviations).

- Date collected: ...
- Time collected: ............. (24hr)
- MSU
- CSU
- Urine – Other, specify
- Urine first voided – for chlamydia
- Faeces
- Sputum
- NP secretions
- BAL
- Induced sputum
- Nose sw
- Throat sw
- Axilla sw
- Groin sw
- Eye sw
- Endocervical sw
- Sw in Virus TM* (give site)
- Sw for chlamydia (give site)
  *special medium
- Blood Culture
- Clotted Blood
- EDTA blood
- CSF

A Biochemistry and Haematology lab report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Range</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full blood count (FBC)</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>115-165</td>
<td>g/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemoglobin (Hb)</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>115-165</td>
<td>g/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haematocrit (HCT)</td>
<td>0.224</td>
<td>0.37-0.47</td>
<td>L/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean cell volume (MCV)</td>
<td>72.5</td>
<td>78.0-98.0</td>
<td>fl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White cell count (WCC)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>4.0-11.0</td>
<td>10^9/L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Range</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urea and electrolytes (U&amp;E)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urea</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>2.5-6.6</td>
<td>mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creatinine</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>60-120</td>
<td>mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium (Na)</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>135-145</td>
<td>mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium (K)</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>3.6-5</td>
<td>mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver function test (LFT)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilirubin</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3-16</td>
<td>mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10-50</td>
<td>U/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkaline Phosphatase (Alk.Phos)</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>40-125</td>
<td>U/L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Terms used to describe lab results

- up + high
- elevated + raised
- down - low
- reduced

When the results are within the normal range, doctors say:

Potassium is within normal limits.
Normal, unremarkable.
35.1 Write the name of the specimen for each of the suspected conditions. Look at A opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suspected condition</th>
<th>Specimen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anaemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bacterial conjunctivitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genital herpes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meningitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septicaemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urinary infection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urinary infection (catheter in place)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.2 Complete the sentences describing the results of the report in B opposite. Look at C opposite to help you.
1. Haemoglobin is .........................................................., one hundred and forty-three ........................................ per litre.
2. Creatinine is slightly .............................................., fifty-eight .............................................. litre.
3. Alkaline Phosphatase is .............................................., one hundred and thirty-one ..........................................
4. ALT is slightly reduced, nine ..........................................
5. Bilirubin is ................................................................., seven .............................................

35.3 Write full descriptions of the following results from a case history. Look at B and C opposite and at 35.2 above to help you.

Na 138, K 4.5, WCC 12.2, HCT 0.224, MCV 72.5, Alk.Phos 72, ALT 9

Sodium is normal, one hundred and thirty-eight millimole per litre.
Functions of endoscopy

Endoscopy is a way of examining parts of the body which are not visible from the outside. A typical endoscope is a flexible tube which is inserted through one of the natural orifices – openings – such as the anus or mouth. Rigid endoscopes, which cannot be bent, are also used but are inserted through small incisions – surgical cuts. The shaft contains several channels to transmit light from the outside and images from inside and to allow different instruments to be used.

Endoscopes can be used for the following:
- to provide diagnostic information
- to excise – cut out – diseased tissue or growths such as polyps
- to clear obstructions
- to take a biopsy
- to cauterize a site of bleeding by applying heat.

Enteroscopy

Dr. Jardine is talking her patient through an enteroscopy.

Now, I'm just lubricating the tube with a jelly which contains a local anaesthetic. It'll help to ensure a smooth passage as it passes down and you shouldn't feel too much.

I'm going to feed the tube through your nose. This is the most uncomfortable part of the procedure but it's very brief. You'll get used to the tube in a few minutes' time. OK, when it hits the back of your throat, take a deliberate swallow. I'll tell you when.


Report of a diagnostic endoscopy

**Examination**

Informed consent was obtained from the patient after discussing risks and benefits of the procedure. The patient was connected to the pulse oximeter and placed in the left lateral position. Oxygen was provided through a nasal cannula and the premedication administered as stated. The endoscope was introduced into the oesophagus. At the end of the examination the patient was transferred to the recovery area to recuperate.
36.1 Complete the table with words from A, B and C opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consent</td>
<td>excision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incise</td>
<td>insertion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recover</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swallow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

36.2 Find words in A and B opposite with the following meanings.
1 to pass (an instrument through an orifice)
2 a substance used in procedures for lubrication
3 the flexible part of the endoscope
4 to stop something bleeding by applying heat
5 a growth that protrudes from a mucous membrane
6 to remove diseased tissue
7 taking a sample of a tissue for analysis
8 not flexible
9 a drug that numbs a particular part of the body
10 become accustomed to

36.3 Replace the underlined words and phrases with alternative words and phrases from C opposite.

After connecting the patient to an (1) instrument which measures levels of oxygen in the blood and pulse rate and placing him (2) on his left side, oxygen was provided through a (3) tube in his nose and the (4) drug treatment prior to the procedure administered as stated. Shortly afterward, the endoscope was (5) inserted into the oesophagus. After the examination, the patient was (6) moved to the recovery area.

Over to you
What would you say to a patient during a bronchoscopy, or during another internal investigation which you carry out regularly?
X-ray and CT

**A** Radiography and radiology

Radiography involves exposing a part of the body to a small dose of radiation to produce an image of the internal organs. Organs with high density such as the ribs and spine are radiopaque, meaning they do not absorb radiation, and appear white or light grey on the image. Lung tissue is radiolucent – absorbs radiation – and appears dark on the image. Before some types of X-rays, patients are given a liquid called a contrast medium, such as barium or iodine, which is radiopaque and allows the organ or tissue it fills to be examined. The contrast medium may be swallowed, introduced through the anus as an enema, or given as an injection.

Radiology is the use of radiation in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases such as cancer.

**B** X-ray examination

The chest X-ray is the commonest diagnostic X-ray examination. Normally a frontal (anteroposterior) view is obtained. The patient stands facing the photographic plate with the chest pressed to the plate, with hands on hips and elbows pushed out in front. The radiographer, the technician who takes the X-ray, asks the patient not to move, then to breathe in deeply and not to breathe out. This makes a blurred, unclear X-ray image less likely and improves the quality of the image, as it is easier to see abnormalities in air-filled (inflated) lungs than in deflated lungs.

Keep still. Now, take a deep breath and hold your breath.

For a side, or lateral view, the patient is asked to stand sideways to the photographic plate with arms raised. A chest X-ray may be repeated at intervals to track for any changes. These repeated examinations are called serial chest X-rays.

**C** Computed Tomography

Here is an extract from a hospital’s press release.

The Western General has installed a new GE LightSpeed 16 Computed Tomography (CT) Scanner. CT uses an X-ray source which rotates around the body to produce cross-sectional images.

The new scanner takes up to 16 simultaneous cross-sectional images (slices) and transmits more data in less time than ever before. Each slice can be less than one millimetre thick, making it possible to find very small abnormalities.

The scanner will be used for:
- diagnosing muscle and bone disorders
- locating tumours, infections and clots
- monitoring the progress of malignant diseases and the response to therapy (treatment)
- providing accurate guidance for interventional procedures such as biopsies, and drainage – removing fluid from the site of an injury or infection.
37.1 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete each sentence. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

1  In radiography, barium is used as a contrast ......................... (image/medium).
2  Tissue which absorbs radiation and appears dark on an X-ray is .........................
    (radiolucent/radiopaque).
3  An ......................... (enema/injection) is a liquid introduced into the bowel by way of the anus.
4  X-rays used to measure the progress of a disease are called .........................
    (repeated/serial) X-rays.
5  If a patient moves during an X-ray, the image may be ......................... (blurred/abnormal).
6  It's easier to see abnormalities when the lungs are ......................... (deflated/inflated).

37.2 Complete the words. Each begins with radio. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

1  Using radiation to diagnose and treat disease is radio..........................
2  Using radiation to make images is radio..........................
3  Using radiation to provide treatment is radio..........................
4  If something is not penetrable by radiation, it is radio..........................
5  If something is penetrable by radiation, it is radio..........................
6  A technician who administers X-rays is a radio..........................

37.3 Complete the radiographer's instructions. Look at B opposite to help you.

Please stand (1) ......................... this board.
Put your hands on the back of your hips and your elbows forward. I'll help you.
(2) ......................... your elbows (3) ..........................
Keep (4) ......................... .
In a moment I'll ask you to (5) ......................... a deep breath in and hold it.
Breathe in, (6) ......................... it.
That's it. Fine. You can breathe out now.
Thank you. I'll need to check the film.
Now I'm going to take a side view.
Can you stand (7) ......................... with your right side close to the machine and your arms raised?

37.4 Complete the table with words from B and C opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>breathe</td>
<td></td>
<td>abnormal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intervene</td>
<td>intervention</td>
<td>therapeutic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Over to you

Explain to a patient what an X-ray is and what a CT scanner does.
Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

MRI is safer than X-rays because it does not use radiation. It provides more information than Computed Tomography (see Unit 37) about some head, neck and spinal disorders because the images are more detailed and have more contrast, meaning the differences between dark and light areas are stronger. Unlike CT, the images can be taken on any plane – any surface of the body seen from an angle. It is now used for imaging – taking images of – the brain and heart, and in oncology.

Contraindications, cases in which it should not be used, include patients with metallic foreign bodies in the orbits, and patients with pacemakers – electronic devices surgically implanted to regulate heartbeat. MRI is also not approved during the first trimester of pregnancy.

Ultrasound

Ultrasound examination uses high-frequency sound waves to view organs and structures inside the body. The waves are generated and received by a hand-held device called a transducer. The reflected waves are processed by a computer which produces detailed images for display on a monitor. Ultrasound is safe as it does not employ ionizing radiation like X-rays. It is a cheap, quick and non-invasive investigation – with no surgical procedure – for a wide range of referrals, although results can be unsatisfactory in obese (overweight) patients.

Preparing for medical imaging

Preparing for an MRI scan

You will need to have completed a safety questionnaire and have it with you\(^1\). It is important that there is no metal on your clothing or person\(^2\). Prior to the scan you can eat and drink normally\(^3\). Your details and safety questionnaire will be checked with you by the radiographers, who will explain the procedure and answer any questions you may have\(^4\). You will be asked to remove any metallic objects, as well as credit cards\(^5\).

You will be asked to lie on the MRI scanner table and make yourself comfortable\(^6\). The radiographer will position the part to be scanned carefully in the scanner\(^7\). During the MRI scan you will not feel anything but you will be required to stay still to achieve the best possible images\(^8\). The whole examination process takes approximately 45 minutes\(^9\). You will not require any injections\(^10\).

Preparing for an ultrasound

You will be asked to lie on an examination table\(^11\). A special gel is applied to your skin\(^12\). This ensures there are no air pockets between the transducer and your body\(^13\). The transducer is moved over the area to be examined\(^14\). You may feel some pressure and experience some discomfort, especially if the test requires you to have a full bladder\(^15\). You may be asked to change your position for clearer pictures\(^16\). When the radiologist is satisfied with the picture quality, the test is done and the gel is wiped off\(^17\). A typical test may take between 20 minutes and one hour\(^18\).

Describing medical imaging

An ultrasound scan of the abdomen demonstrated a small right renal tumour.

An ultrasound scan showed an intra-abdominal abscess.
38.1 Match the two parts of the sentences. Look at A opposite to help you.
1 MRI provides more detailed information than CT because
2 MRI is not approved for use in
3 MRI is safer than X-rays because
4 MRI allows imaging on many planes
   a there is no radiation.
   b unlike CT.
   c of high contrast sensitivity.
   d the first three months of pregnancy.

38.2 Match what the radiographer says during an MRI scan with a numbered point in C opposite.
   a You don’t need any injections.
   b I want you to lie down and just relax.
   c It’s important that you try not to move.
   d I’m going to go through your questionnaire with you.
   e It will be over in three-quarters of an hour.
   f It’s very important that you put any metal objects into this tray.

38.3 Match what the radiographer says during an ultrasound with a numbered point in C opposite.
   a I’m going to put some gel on your abdomen. You might find it a bit cold.
   b That’s it. All done. I’ll just clean you up.
   c I’d like you to lie flat on your back on the table.
   d The gel is to make sure there’s a good contact with your skin.
   e I’ll move this back and forwards to cover the whole area.

38.4 Make word combinations using a word from each box. You may need to look at Units 34 to 37. Then use some of the word combinations to complete the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>breathe</th>
<th>anaesthetic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>excise</td>
<td>your breath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experience</td>
<td>area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign</td>
<td>diseased tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>discomfort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>informed</td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduce</td>
<td>bodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>consent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recovery</td>
<td>the endoscope</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I’m going to give you a ____________________________ so that you won’t feel any pain.
2 With an MRI, it’s important there are no metallic ____________________________ in the eyes.
3 After an operation, patients are moved to a ____________________________ to recuperate.
4 Endoscopes can be used to ____________________________ .
5 Before an endoscopy, the patient’s ____________________________ must be obtained.

Over to you

Explain to a patient why you are referring her for an ultrasound scan or an MRI scan, and what she can expect to happen during the procedure.
ECG

A. Uses of an ECG

An electrocardiogram (ECG) is a tracing, or drawing, produced by an electrocardiograph - a device which records electrical activity in the heart. An ECG can be used for:

- deciding if the heart is performing normally or suffering from abnormalities, for example cardiac arrhythmia - extra or skipped heartbeats
- indicating damage to heart muscle, such as heart attacks, or ischaemia of heart muscle (angina)
- detecting conduction abnormalities: heart blocks and bundle branch blocks (BBB)
- screening for ischaemic heart disease during an exercise tolerance test, often carried out on an exercise bike or treadmill
- providing information on the physical condition of the heart, for example in patients with left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH)
- detecting electrolyte disturbances, for example low plasma potassium levels.

B. ECG procedure

Here is an extract from a medical textbook.

1. The patient should lie down and relax.
2. Calibrate the ECG machines - a standard signal of 1 mV should move the stylus two large squares (1 cm) vertically.
3. Attach the limb leads: left arm (LA), right arm (RA), left leg (LL), and right leg (RL).
4. Record the six standard leads: I, II, III, augmented voltage right arm (AVR), augmented voltage left arm (AVL), and augmented voltage foot (AVF) - three or four complexes (see C below) for each.
5. Apply the electrode to the six chest positions in turn, recording three to four complexes of each. If the rhythm does not appear to be sinus (normal rhythm), a rhythm strip of 6–10 complexes in a single lead should be recorded.

C. A normal ECG

The picture shows an ECG tracing of a normal heartbeat showing a P wave, a QRS complex and a T wave. Each large square is equivalent to 0.2 seconds. The R–R interval gives the heart rate, in this case 75/min. In the case of abnormalities, the QRS complex can be widened or too tall. The ST segment can be elevated or depressed. The T wave can be the right way up, or inverted – the wrong way up.
39.1 Find words and phrases in A and B opposite with the following meanings.
1 the marks produced by an ECG stylus
2 a test which determines how well a patient copes with physical exercise
3 a missed heart beat
4 a change in the chemical composition of body fluids
5 the flow of electric current in the heart
6 testing for disease
7 check or adjust an instrument before use
8 the pen which produces the drawing

39.2 Label the limb leads (a–d) on the first diagram, and write a title (e) for the second diagram. Look at B opposite to help you.

39.3 Complete the text using words from the box. Look at C opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>complexes</th>
<th>leads</th>
<th>wave</th>
<th>interval</th>
<th>rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

This very abnormal ECG shows a (1) ______________ of approximately 33/min; a single long pause of approximately 4 seconds between ventricular complexes with atrial activity; widened QRS (2) ______________ in keeping with (R)BBB. Deep T (3) ______________ inversion in II, III, AVF and some chest (4) ______________ (V4–V6). Deep QRS complexes in V2 and V5 in keeping with LVH. One atrial ectopic. QT (5) ______________ is normal.

Lead II

Over to you
Describe an ECG tracing of one of your patients to a colleague.
Prescriptions and drugs

As part of treatment, a doctor may prescribe medication, commonly referred to as medicine or drugs. A prescription may take these forms:

```
Tab. Nabumetone 500 mg
mitte 56
sig. 2 tab. Nocte
```

Old style

```
Nabumetone Tab 500 mg
send 56
label 2 tablets at night
```

New style

In the UK, patients take prescriptions to a chemist's shop, which sells a wide range of non-prescription medicines and other products such as cosmetics, for dispensing by a pharmacist (the person who prepares the medicines). In hospitals, prescriptions are dispensed by the pharmacy (the department where the drugs are prepared).

Drugs come in many different forms. See Appendix III on page 143 for descriptions and illustrations, and Appendix II on page 131 for a list of abbreviations used in prescriptions.

Note: Latin abbreviations in prescriptions are being replaced by English, but may still be seen.

The British National Formulary

The British National Formulary provides information on prescribing and administering prescription drugs in the UK.

**SULCONAZOLE NITRATE**

**Indications:** Fungal skin infections

**Cautions:** Contact with eyes and mucous membranes should be avoided.

**Side-effects:** Occasional local irritation and hypersensitivity reactions include mild burning sensation, erythema, and itching. Also blistering. Treatment should be discontinued if these are severe.

**Dose:** Apply 1–2 times daily, continuing for 2–3 weeks after lesions have healed.

Exelderm® (Centrapharm)

**Cream,** sulconazole nitrate 1%

An indication is a situation or a sign that suggests a specific treatment should be given. A contraindication is a situation or sign that a specific drug or treatment should not be used or is contraindicated.

Exelderm® is a proprietary – commercial – name for a medication containing sulconazole nitrate. The same drug may have both a proprietary name and a generic name. For example, Prozac and Fluoxetine are the proprietary and generic names for the same drug.
40.1 Match the abbreviations (1–9) with their meanings (a–i). Look at Appendix II on page 131 to help you.

1. p.c.
2. q.d.s.
3. s.c.
4. s.l.
5. p.o.
6. c.c.
7. p.r.n.
8. i.v.
9. infus
a. by mouth
b. sublingual
c. with meals
d. as required
e. after food
f. intravenous
g. four times a day
h. infusion
i. subcutaneous

40.2 Complete the sentences. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

1. _______________ of the skin may be caused by drugs such as aspirin which can produce a rash.
2. At a _______________ you can get your prescription and all sorts of other health products.
3. Gastro-intestinal irritation is a _______________ of aspirin.
4. Aspirin is _______________ for patients with previous or active peptic ulceration.
5. When bubbles appear on the skin due to heat or irritation, this is called _______________.
6. The maximum _______________ of paracetamol for an adult is 4 grammes daily.
7. _______________ means a drug is not contraindicated but care must be taken in its use.
8. _______________ for codeine phosphate are mild to moderate pain and cough suppression.
9. A person who dispenses drugs is a _______________.
10. The place where drugs are dispensed in a hospital is a _______________.

40.3 Describe each of these prescriptions for a patient with suspected acute coronary syndrome. Look at Appendix II on page 131 to help you. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medicine</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Method of administration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Streptokinase</td>
<td>1 500 000 U</td>
<td>i.v. infus® over 60 mins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>300 mg</td>
<td>p.o. stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diamorphine</td>
<td>2.5–5 mg</td>
<td>i.v. stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metoclopramide</td>
<td>10 mg</td>
<td>i.v. stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTN</td>
<td>300 mcg/5 ml</td>
<td>i.v. infus® start @ 40 mcg/min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Streptokinase, one and a half million units by intravenous infusion over sixty minutes.

Over to you
Practise writing prescriptions in English for medication you often have to prescribe in your own language.
Surgical treatment

The operating theatre
Surgery is carried out in an operating theatre. Great care is taken to make sure that operations take place in sterile conditions – free from microorganisms. The surgeon and his or her assistant wash or scrub up, and put on surgical gowns, masks, and gloves. The patient’s skin is prepared by disinfecting it with an antiseptic solution. This is known as prepping (preparing) the patient. They are then covered with sterile drapes, so that only the area of the operation is exposed.

Instruments
The most basic surgical instruments are shown in the picture.

The operation
The operation begins when the surgeon makes an incision or cut. Control of bleeding is very important. A swab is a pad of cotton or other material used to soak up blood from the operation site. A sucker is a mechanical device which aspirates – sucks up – blood. Bleeding vessels are tied with ligatures or sealed by an electric current (diathermy).

Drains may be inserted to carry away fluid which might act as a culture medium for bacteria. Various methods are used to close the wound, for example sutures (also known as stitches), or staples. Finally, the wound is covered with a dressing.

An operation report

This patient had an indirect right inguinal hernia.
Anaesthesia: Spinal anaesthetic with local anaesthetic infiltration
Incision: Right inguinal
Procedure: The external oblique aponeurosis was divided and the spermatic cord mobilized. The hernial sac was identified and separated from the spermatic cord. The hernial sac was then mobilized back to its neck where it was transfixed and the redundant tissue excised. The fascia at the neck of the spermatic cord was divided, carefully preserving the vessels, the genital branch of the nerve and the vas deferens. Thereafter the posterior wall of the inguinal canal was repaired in two layers.
Closure: The wound was closed in layers with Dexon suture material to the external oblique aponeurosis and staples to the skin.
41.1 Which of the instruments shown in B opposite is needed for each of the following procedures?

1 making an incision
2 keeping the sides of the wound open
3 cutting sutures
4 holding the cut ends of blood vessels before they are tied

41.2 A surgeon is talking to a medical student about assisting at operations. Complete his advice using words from A, B and C opposite.

An (1)___________________ must be able to carry out the following tasks to help the surgeon. Firstly, he or she must help in (2)___________________ the patient and putting the (3)___________________ in place to provide (4)___________________ conditions. Expert handling of a (5)___________________ is essential to allow the surgeon to see what he is doing. The assistant must also keep the operation site free of blood, by careful use of the (6)___________________ or (7)___________________ . The surgeon also needs assistance with tying and cutting (8)___________________, and with the insertion of a (9)___________________, if necessary. Finally, the assistant may be asked to close the wound with (10)___________________ or other devices.

41.3 Find words in C and D opposite with the following meanings.

1 cut into two parts
2 corrected (something that was damaged)
3 freed from surrounding tissues
4 removed by cutting out
5 spread of liquid into an area
6 making sure something is not damaged
7 small metal devices to hold the edges of a wound together
8 unnecessary
9 sewing up of the wound
10 flat, thin pieces of tissue that lie on top of one another

Over to you

Keyhole surgery (endoscopic surgery) has become popular. How important is it in surgery? Why?
**42** Therapies

---

### A Radiotherapy and chemotherapy

**Radiotherapy** is the use of radiation in controlled doses to treat cancers. It works by damaging the DNA of malignant cells. Radiotherapy may be used:

- as **curative** treatment, for example to shrink tumours
- as **adjuvant** treatment, alongside or following **chemotherapy** – treatment with anti-cancer drugs
- in lower doses as **palliative** treatment to reduce pain and other symptoms of cancer or disease, but not as a cure.

A **radiologist** determines the dose and the exact target for the radiation beams. Dosage is measured in **grays** (Gy). A daily dose is a **fraction**. Radiotherapy can also be delivered internally by radioactive **implants** such as needles, or by liquids such as strontium for some bone cancers.

---

### B A day in the life of a physiotherapist

Sam is a hospital **physiotherapist**. She works mainly with patients who have conditions or injuries affecting the lower extremities such as fractures, torn ligaments, and cartilage tears. Most of her patients are **referrals** from other departments in her hospital. She also works with patients in **rehabilitation** following orthopaedic surgery. Some are young people with sports injuries, others are elderly people who have had **hip replacements**. Among her therapies are **manipulation**, **massage**, and exercise to keep the joints mobile and to strengthen muscles. **Rehabilitating** some patients means helping them to walk again using **crutches** or **Zimmer frames**.

---

### C Cognitive Behavioural Therapy

**Cognitive Behavioural Therapy** (CBT) is one of the ‘talking therapies’ for mental health conditions. It aims to eliminate negative thoughts and change behaviour in response to these thoughts. It can help with anxiety, panic attacks, depressive disorders, **post-traumatic stress disorder** and **chronic fatigue**. Therapy can be provided in **face-to-face sessions** with a **therapist**, but delivery by computer can also be effective. It is more effective than **counselling** for some and can provide long-term protection against **relapse**, a return of symptoms after improvement. However, patients must be committed to solving their problems and prepared to work on them between sessions.

---

*Professional English in Use Medicine*
2.1 Name the therapy being described. The same therapy may be described more than once. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.
1 Treatment with drugs toxic to cancer
2 Treatment of cancer by radiation
3 May include massage
4 Aims to eliminate negative thoughts
5 Can involve helping people to walk again
6 Can help with panic attacks

2.2 Complete the sentences. Look at A opposite to help you.
1 .................................. treatment is given in larger doses than palliative treatment.
2 Radiotherapy can be used alongside other treatments as .................................. therapy.
3 .................................. treatment is treatment which helps relieve the symptoms of a condition but does not cure it.
4 Radioactive .................................. are wires or needles placed into the area to be treated.
5 A typical .................................. for an adult is 1.8 to 2 Gy.

2.3 Complete the text describing a typical working day for Sam. Look at B opposite to help you.

Work begins around 8.00 am. I check for new (1) .................................. on the computer and prepare for my morning appointments. Between 9.00 and 12.00 I see new patients around the hospital. I carry out assessments on them and decide what the appropriate form of (2) .................................. is. I work with broken limbs, joint (3) .................................. and ligament repairs. I deal with A&E patients as well as patients referred to me by their GPs or specialists.

After lunch I see regular patients. Their therapy includes exercises to increase range of motion and to strengthen muscles.

What do I like about being a (4) ..................................? Getting people back to normal. (5) .................................. people so they can get on with their lives after an injury or an operation.

*Over to you*

Talk about two contrasting therapies you have experienced, and the advantages and disadvantages of each.
Screening and immunization

Screening
Screening is a way of identifying people at increased or greater risk for a condition, although they do not yet have any signs or symptoms. In some cases, mass screening – screening large numbers of people – is appropriate, for example in the past for tuberculosis. In other cases, only those with high risk factors, like a family history of conditions such as cancer and diabetes, are screened. However, there are a number of problems with screening. There are always false negatives, cases where a patient has a disease but screening does not identify it. There are also false positives, where someone is told they have a disease when in fact they do not. Furthermore, with some diseases, early identification is of no benefit to the patient as there is no treatment available.

Common screening tests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Subjects</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neural tube defects and Down’s Syndrome risk</td>
<td>AFP</td>
<td>pregnant women</td>
<td>between 16 and 17 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast cancer</td>
<td>mammography</td>
<td>women, 50–70</td>
<td>every 3 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical cancer</td>
<td>smear test</td>
<td>women, 20–60</td>
<td>every 3 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular disease</td>
<td>blood cholesterol</td>
<td>&gt;40 with high risk factors</td>
<td>every year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Secondary prevention

| Cholesterol >4                | blood cholesterol | patients with heart disease | every 6 months       |
| Diabetic retinopathy          | ophthalmoscopy (see Unit 34) | patients with diabetes | every year           |

Immunization for travellers

The following vaccinations are recommended for travellers to South Asia:

HEPATITIS A OR IMMUNE GLOBULIN (IG)
Transmission of hepatitis A virus can occur through direct person-to-person contact, through exposure to contaminated water, ice, or shellfish harvested in contaminated water; or from uncooked fruits, vegetables, or other foods.

HEPATITIS B
Especially if you might be exposed to blood or body fluids (for example, health-care workers), have sexual contact with the local population, or be exposed through medical treatment.

JAPANESE ENCEPHALITIS
If you plan to visit rural farming areas and under special circumstances, such as a known outbreak of Japanese encephalitis.

MALARIA
Your risk of malaria may be high in these countries, including cities. Travellers should take an effective antimalarial drug.

RABIES
If you might have extensive, unprotected outdoor exposure in rural areas.

TYPHOID
Typhoid fever can be contracted through contaminated drinking water or food. Large outbreaks are most often related to fecal contamination of water supplies or foods sold by street vendors. Vaccination is particularly important because of the presence of S. typhi strains resistant to multiple antibiotics in this region.

AS NEEDED
Booster doses for tetanus, diphtheria and measles, and a one-time dose of polio for adults.
43.1 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1 ................................................................. for heart disease include smoking, high cholesterol and a 
family history of heart disease.
2 In a small number of cases screening will not identify patients with the early signs of a disease. 
   These are ..................................................
3 Some people without signs of the disease will be wrongly identified as having the disease. 
   These are ..................................................
4 People ...................................................... blood or body fluids should be immunized against 
   Hepatitis B.
5 A ............................................. vaccination is given some time after the first vaccination to make sure the 
   level of antibodies remains high.
6 Hepatitis B can be ........................................ through exposure to body fluids.
7 Penicillin now has no effect against some hospital-acquired infections as they are 
   ............................................................... penicillin.
8 An ......................................................... of measles has affected a number of children who had not been 
   immunized with the MMR vaccine.

43.2 Complete the sentences using information from B opposite. The first one has been done 
for you.

1 Women aged from 50 to 70 should have mammography every three years to check for breast cancer.
2 Patients with heart disease .................................................................
3 Women between 20 and 60 .................................................................
4 Patients over 40 with high risk factors ..................................................
5 Patients with diabetes .................................................................
6 Pregnant women .................................................................

43.3 Which of the immunizations listed in C opposite would you recommend for the following 
visitors to South Asia?

1 A tourist who will stay for a few nights in five-star hotels in major cities
2 A backpacker who will travel by local transport from one city to another
3 A medical student doing an elective in a city hospital
4 A volunteer who will live for a year in a rural community
5 A traveller who has not had a tetanus vaccination for ten years

Over to you

What immunizations are advised for visitors to your country, or a country you would like to visit?
Epidemiology

A

Rates

The study of the spread and control of diseases in the community (epidemiology) requires analysis of frequency – the number of times something occurs in a particular period. We talk about frequency using word combinations with rate:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>birth</th>
<th>death (mortality)</th>
<th>case fatality</th>
<th>survival</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= the number of births in a population (group of people)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= the number of deaths in a population</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= the number of deaths from a particular disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= the number of patients still alive after treatment for a particular disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The birth rate in Singapore is 10.2 per 1,000 population. The infant mortality rate in Singapore is 3.0 per 1,000 live births.

Other words used to talk about frequency:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Malaria is</th>
<th>common</th>
<th>in many developing countries.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uncommon</td>
<td>in developed countries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B

Incidence and prevalence

The prevalence of a disease is the number of people in a population who have the disease at a particular time. The incidence of the disease is the number of new cases of the disease during a particular time.

The incidence of malaria is high in many developing countries. The incidence of malaria is low in developed countries.

The incidence of HIV infection is highest in sub-Saharan Africa. The incidence of HIV infection is lowest in the Caribbean.

Note: You don’t say ‘The incidence of malaria is common.’ The incidences of a disease in different groups are often compared.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rheumatoid arthritis</th>
<th>is more common in females than in males.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rheumatoid arthritis</td>
<td>is less common in males than in females.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men and women are equally affected by restless leg syndrome.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

Association and causation

Studying the incidence of disease in particular groups of people can lead to the discovery of causation – what makes it occur. For example, the high incidence of lung cancer among cigarette smokers suggests that smoking is a causative factor in the development of lung cancer. However, care must be taken not to assume every association between a disease and a measured variable is causative. To say there is an association between two things simply means that they occur together in a certain situation. For example, several studies have indicated high rates of lung cancer in cooks. Although this could be a consequence of their work (perhaps caused by carcinogens in fumes from frying), it may be simply because professional cooks smoke more than the average. In other words, smoking might confound the association with cooking.
44.1 Complete the sentences. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

1. The proportion of episodes of illness that end fatally is the ........................................ rate.

2. The proportion of people who die in a particular period is the ...................................... rate.

3. The proportion of babies born in a particular period is the ........................................ rate.

4. The proportion of patients who are still alive five years after treatment is the five-year ........................................ rate.

5. Ten per cent of the population have perennial rhinitis at any time. This is the ................... .

6. Every year, 0.5–1.0% develop the condition. This is the ................... .

44.2 Complete the text, using the correct grammatical form of each word. Look at the table and at A, B and C opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Incidence (per 100,000)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>67.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>59.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>55.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>51.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>44.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>22.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>12.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In all countries, lung cancer was (1) ................................................. in men than in women. The (2) ........................................ incidence among men was in China where 67.5 men per 100,000 were diagnosed with lung cancer in the period. In women, however, lung cancer was less (3) ........................................ in China than in the USA and Canada.

The (4) ........................................ incidence in both men and women was in India. Sweden also had a fairly (5) ........................................ incidence in both sexes. Lung cancer is probably (6) ........................................ in India for cultural and economic reasons, whereas in Sweden it is the result of an effective health education campaign.

44.3 Find prepositions in A, B and C opposite that can be used to make word combinations with the words in the box. Then use the correct forms of the words to complete the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>affected</th>
<th>association</th>
<th>incidence</th>
<th>lead</th>
<th>rare</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Recent surveys showed that the ................................................. HIV cases had come down in the southern states of India.

2. Epidemiologic data suggest an ................................................. obesity and depression, but further studies are needed.

3. Appropriate preventive measures should ........................................ a reduction in the mortality rate.

4. Thalassaemia is ................................................. people of Northern European origin.

5. Male and female soldiers are equally ................................................. post-traumatic stress disorder.

Over to you

Which diseases have the highest incidence in your country? What is the commonest cause of death in men and in women?
Medical ethics

A

GMC guidelines

care = protecting and looking after someone

professional competence = level of specialized knowledge and skills

confidential = private, secret

prejudice = have a negative influence on

risk = possibility of something bad happening

fit to practise = in a suitable condition to work

The duties of a doctor registered with the General Medical Council include:

1. Make the care of your patient your first concern.
2. Treat every patient politely and considerately.
3. Give patients information in a way they can understand.
4. Keep your professional knowledge and skills up to date.
5. Recognize the limits of your professional competence.
6. Be honest and trustworthy.
7. Respect and protect confidential information.
8. Make sure that your personal beliefs do not prejudice your patients’ care.
9. Act quickly to protect patients from risk if you have good reason to believe that you or your colleague may not be fit to practise.

Note: For a full list of the guidelines, see www.gmc-uk.org

B

Bioethical issues

Euthanasia
Should the medical profession help the terminally ill to end their lives when they choose?

Genetic engineering
Should we permit an embryo to be cloned – copied exactly – to replace a child who has died? Should parents be able to select the genetic makeup of their children to produce so-called designer babies?

Human fertility
IVF – in vitro fertilization – has made it possible for infertile women to have children, but should this include women long past the normal age of childbearing?

Embryos can be frozen and implanted in the mother at a later date but should this require the consent or permission of both parents if the marriage has broken down?

What are the rights of a surrogate mother, one who carries a child for a woman who is unable to do so, over that child?

Transplant surgery
Who should give consent for the removal of body parts for transplant surgery?

C

Assisted dying
A medical student has made some language notes on a journal article.

A 53-year-old woman with incurable muscular dystrophy flew to Switzerland to end her life. Assisted dying is legal in Switzerland but illegal in the U.K. Opponents of euthanasia, or 'mercy killing', argue that legalization would lead to abuse and call for doctors who participate to be struck off.

What Britain needs, they claim, is better palliative care and more hospices for the terminally ill to allow such patients to die with dignity.

This follows a recent US case where the husband of a woman who had been in a persistent vegetative state for 16 years was successful in having artificial feeding withdrawn in spite of opposition from his wife’s parents.

stroke off = removed from the GMC register and banned from practising medicine in the UK

palliative care = treatment to relieve, rather than cure, symptoms

hospice = facility providing care for terminally ill patients

terminally ill = not expected to live

persistent vegetative state = unable to speak or follow simple commands; does not respond in any psychologically meaningful way
5.1 Which of the GMC guidelines in A opposite is breached in each of these cases?

a A GP falls asleep regularly during consultations. His colleagues do nothing.
b A doctor is aware that a patient has a history of violence against women. She informs a friend whose daughter has just become engaged to this man.
c A doctor attempts to dissuade a patient from having an abortion as this procedure is against his religious beliefs.
d A doctor refers a patient to a medical textbook for an explanation of his pancreatic cancer.
e A doctor fails to complete the number of days of professional development training advised annually.
f A doctor tells a seriously overweight patient who has ignored his advice to diet that she deserves any ill effects that might result from her obesity.

5.2 Match each headline to an opening line from a newspaper report. Look at B and C opposite to help you.

1. 66-year-old becomes oldest mother  
2. Frozen embryo case to go to Europe  
3. Surrogate mother sued by couple  
4. Embryo cloning – where will it take us?  
5. Using body parts without consent  
6. UK full face transplant search on  
7. ‘Designer baby’ rules are relaxed  
8. Doctors back infant mercy killing

a A woman of 30 who agreed to bear a child for a childless couple then refused to part with the child has been ...
b A surgeon has been accused of removing organs from patients without their knowledge ...
c Three-quarters of Belgian doctors are willing to assist in the death of critically ill babies to end their suffering.
d A woman hoping to stop the destruction of six embryos created with her eggs and her ex-partner’s sperm launched a case at the European Court of Human Rights ...
e A woman has given birth in Romania following IVF treatment.
f Consultant plastic surgeon Dr Peter Butler has been given the go-ahead by a hospital ethics committee to find a patient who meets selection criteria for a full face transplant.
g If your favourite pet dies, it is technically possible to produce exact replicas – but what about humans?
h It is now legal to select embryos to provide blood cell transplants for sick siblings.

Over to you
What are your views on assisted dying?
Research studies

A  Case-control studies

Here are some extracts from a medical textbook.

In a case-control study, a group of people suffering from a disease (the cases) is compared with a group who do not have the disease, but are similar in other ways (the controls). The two groups, the participants in the study, are compared to see if they were exposed to a possible risk factor or not. A risk factor is something which may contribute to the cause of disease. This type of study is often used as a first step in identifying the cause of a disease.

B  Cohort studies

In a cohort study, a group (cohort) of people (subjects) who are similar is studied over a period of years (a longitudinal study) to determine if there is a relationship between exposure to a risk factor and development of a disease. At the beginning of a prospective study, none of the subjects has the disease. They are followed up for a number of years, and at the end of the period, those who have developed the disease are compared with those who have not. In a retrospective study, the researchers look back, by studying hospital records, for example, at what has happened in the past, comparing subjects who have developed the disease with those who have not. In a cohort study and in a case-control study the subjects are only observed and there is no intervention such as drug treatment or surgery. A cohort study is a more reliable method of identifying the cause of disease than a case-control study. But for proof of cause, a trial is needed.

C  Trials

In a trial, a group of people who are suffering from a disease are given a particular treatment. To determine the effectiveness of the treatment, a controlled trial is performed. Two groups are studied: one group (the study group) is given the treatment and the other (the control group) is not. The controls may be given a placebo — something which seems to be identical to the treatment but which has no effect. If there is an equal possibility that patients may be selected for the study group or for the controls, the trial is said to be randomized. A randomized controlled trial makes bias — error in a study which influences the results — less likely. An additional way of removing bias is blinding: patients do not know if they are receiving the treatment or the placebo. If, in addition, the researchers do not know who is receiving the treatment, the trial is a double blind trial. Randomized controlled trials are used to test treatments or preventive measures.

D  Variables

If the subjects in a study are all aged 50, then age is a constant in the study. If their ages range from 20 to 70, then age is a variable. A confounding variable is any variable which is associated with both the disease and the risk factor being studied (for example, smoking in the case of cooks and lung cancer discussed in Unit 44). If such variables exist there is no way for the researcher to know whether the difference in the risk factor or the confounding variable is the one that is truly causing the disease.
46.1 Complete the table with words from A, B and C opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exposure</td>
<td>participate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(person)</td>
<td>intervene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>study</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

46.2 Complete the sentences with a word from A, B, C or D opposite.

1. People who are not receiving the experimental treatment, but who are otherwise the same as those receiving it are ________________________.
2. A trial in which neither the subjects nor the researchers know who is receiving the treatment is a ________________________ trial.
3. A study that follows the participants over many years is a ________________________ study.
4. A ________________________ is a group of people with similar characteristics.
5. Allocation to groups is ________________________ if all participants have equal chance of being in either group.
6. A harmless substance given to some participants to test the effect of a trial substance is a ________________________.
7. Something that might be a part of the cause of a disease is a ________________________ factor.
8. Something that might cause confusion about the cause of a disease is a ________________________ variable.

46.3 Study the research questions below, and in each case decide which of the research study types mentioned in A, B and C opposite would answer the questions best. Use the index or a dictionary to look up any unfamiliar words.

1. To examine the outcomes of an unwanted first pregnancy (abortion vs. live delivery) and risk of depression.
   (BMJ 2005;331: 1303 Reproduced with permission from the BMJ Publishing Group)

2. To test the hypothesis that supplemental oxygen reduces infection risk in patients following colorectal surgery.
   (JAMA 2005; 294: 2035)

3. To develop a relatively simple, inexpensive, and accurate test that measures telomerase activity in voided urine to apply to large-scale screening programs for bladder cancer detection.
   (JAMA 2005; 294: 2052)

4. To evaluate the relative risk of being responsible for a fatal crash while driving under the influence of cannabis.
   (BMJ 2005;331: 1371 Reproduced with permission from the BMJ Publishing Group)

Over to you

Describe a research study that you've carried out or would be interested in carrying out. In your experience, what are the main problems encountered in designing a research study?
A full case history
A full case history covers:

- personal details
- presenting complaint
- past medical history (PMH)
- drug history (see Unit 48)
- family history (see Unit 48)
- social and personal history (see Unit 48)
- patient ideas, concerns and expectations (see Unit 49)
- review of systems (see Unit 49).

B Personal details
Normally, patients’ personal details have been entered in their records by a nurse or administrative staff before a doctor sees them. However, on later consultations a doctor may wish to check details such as address, date of birth, occupation or marital status.

To find out or to check a patient’s occupation, doctors ask:

Do you work?  
What do you do for a living?

Patients may respond:

No, I’m unemployed.  
I’m out of work.  
No, I’m retired.  
I’m a pensioner.  
Yes, I work for a bank.  
I work in a factory.

To find out or to check a patient’s marital status, doctors ask:

Do you have a partner?

Patients may respond:

No, I’m single.
separated.
divorced.  
Yes, I’m married.
I live with my partner.
spouse.
husband.
wife.

No, I’m a widow.
widower.
divorced.  
My spouse passed away last year.

Note: A spouse can be a wife or husband. A widow is a woman whose husband is no longer living; a widower is a man whose wife is no longer living. To avoid saying someone is dead, patients may say that person has passed away.

C Talking about pain
Case notes are kept for each consultation. The Presenting Complaint section of case notes records the patient’s symptoms. For example:

R. sided temporal headache.  
severe, throbbing.  
Lasts 24-48 hrs.

In this case, the patient complains of a headache. For a list of the questions the doctor asked this patient, and for patients’ descriptions of other kinds of pain, see Appendix IV on page 144.
7.1 Study the case notes. Write the questions the doctor asked to obtain the numbered information. Look at Appendix IV on page 144 to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SURNAME</th>
<th>Dates</th>
<th>FIRST NAMES</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Marital Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Allis</td>
<td>Aurelie Bridgehope</td>
<td>married(31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D.O.E. 3/04/75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sex F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Occupation: bank clerk(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Presenting complaint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s/s severe headache, luring in nature(3), mainly in and around R eye(3).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Can radiate to forehead(3). Comes on at any time(3) and can vary in duration 1-2hrs(3). No precipitating(3) or relieving(3) factors.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Has noticed haloes around lights with some blurry vision in R eye and vomiting(30).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2 Read the continuation of the case notes for the patient in C opposite. Write the doctor's questions. Look at Appendix IV on page 144 to help you.

PMH Similar headaches 10 yrs. coming every 3 mins. often premenstrual. Aggravated by eating chocolate relieved by lying in dark room. Can have visual auras, blurred vision, nausea + fits vomiting.

Doctor: Can you tell me what the problem is?
Patient: I've got a terrible headache.
Doctor: (1) .................................................................................
Patient: Just here.
Doctor: (2) .................................................................................
Patient: Well, it's really bad. And it throbs.
Doctor: Have you had anything like this before?
Patient: Yes, about every three months. I've had them for the last ten years or so.
Doctor: (3) .................................................................................
Patient: Usually one or two days. This one started yesterday morning.
Doctor: (4) .................................................................................
Patient: They usually start just before my period. Sometimes if I eat chocolate. I'm not sure.
Doctor: (5) .................................................................................
Patient: If I lie down in a dark room it helps. Light makes them worse.
Doctor: (6) .................................................................................
Patient: If I move my head, it gets more painful.
Doctor: Apart from the headache, (7) .................................................
Patient: Yes, my eye feels strange. Sometimes I can't see clearly, things get blurred. I feel sick and sometimes I am sick.

7.3 Complete the sentences. Look at Appendix IV on page 144 to help you.
1 Gastric ulcers are associated with a ..........................................., ................. pain.
2 Cystitis causes ........................................................., ......................................... pain on passing urine.
3 Patients with a peptic ulcer may say they have a ..........................................., ......................................... pain.
4 Recurrent abdominal pain (RAP) may be described as .................................................. or .................................................. .
5 Migraine is often described as a ..........................................., ......................................... pain.
6 People with osteoarthritis often complain of a deep .................................................. centred in the joint.
7 Kidney stone pain is sudden, severe and .................................................. .
8 Angina is usually described as a crushing or heavy or ......................................... pain.

Over to you
Choose at least three common conditions and make a note of how patients would describe the pain in English.
Taking a history 2

Drug history

Here is an extract from a medical textbook.

It is essential to obtain full details of all the drugs and medications taken by the patient. Not infrequently patients forget to mention, or forget the name of, drugs they take. Some may be over-the-counter remedies unknown to the general practitioner. The significance of others, such as herbal remedies or laxatives, may not be appreciated by the patient.

It is necessary to determine the precise identity of the drug, the dose used, the frequency of administration and the patient's compliance or lack of it.

It is important to ask about known drug allergies or suspected drug reactions and to record the information on the front of the notes to be obvious to any doctor seeing the patient. Failure to ask the question or to record the answer properly may be lethal.

To find out about drug history, doctors ask:

Details of drugs and medications

- Are you taking any medication at the moment?
- Do you use any over-the-counter remedies or herbal or homeopathic medicines?

Frequency of administration

- How many times a day?

Side-effects and allergies

- Do you get any side effects?
- Do you know if you are allergic to any drug?

If the answer is Yes: What symptoms do you get after taking it?

Family history

Note the age, health or cause of death of parents, siblings (brothers and sisters), spouse (husband or wife), and children. To find out about family history, doctors ask:

- Do you have any brothers and sisters?
- Do you have any children?
- Are all your close relatives alive?
- Are your parents alive and well?
- Is anyone taking regular medication?

- How old was he when he died?
- Do you know the cause of death? / What did he die of?
- Does anyone in your family have a serious illness?

Social and personal history

Record the relevant information about occupation, housing and personal habits including recreation, physical exercise, alcohol and tobacco and, in the case of children, about school and family relationships. Typical questions in taking a social and personal history are:

- What kind of house do you live in?
- Do you live alone?
- Who shares your home with you?
- How old are your children?
- Are any of them at nursery or school?
- What's your occupation?
- Do you have any problems at work?
- Do you have any financial problems?
- Do you have any hobbies or interests?
- What about exercise?

- Do you smoke?
- How many a day?
- Have you tried giving up?
- What about alcohol?
- Wine, beer or spirits?
- Can you give up alcohol when you want?
- How much do you drink in a week?
- What's the most you would drink in a week?
- Are you aware of any difference in your alcohol consumption over the past five years?
48.1 Complete the sentences. Look at A, B and C opposite to help you.

1 Pharmacies sell a wide variety of __________________________ remedies as well as dispensing prescriptions from physicians.
2 The __________________________ is the quantity of the medication to be taken at any one time.
3 A drug __________________________ is hypersensitivity to a particular drug.
4 A __________________________ is a medication prepared from plants, especially a traditional remedy.
5 Your brothers and your sisters are your __________________________.
6 __________________________ is what you do for physical or mental stimulus outside work.
7 __________________________ can take many forms: apartments, single rooms, houses, hostels.
8 The patient’s __________________________ to drug treatment, his willingness or ability to take the right dose at the right time and frequency, is essential.

48.2 Write the doctor’s questions. Look at B opposite to help you.

Doctor: (1) __________________________ ?
Patient: My father died twenty years ago but my mother is in good health still. She’s seventy now.
Doctor: (2) __________________________ ?
Patient: I was still at school. He was forty-one.
Doctor: (3) __________________________ ?
Patient: He had a heart attack.
Doctor: (4) __________________________ ?
Patient: I’ve got a sister of forty-five and a brother who’s thirty-six.
Doctor: (5) __________________________ ?
Patient: No, I had an elder brother but he died in his forties. He was forty-two.
Doctor: (6) __________________________ ?
Patient: Like my father, a heart attack.
Doctor: (7) __________________________ ?
Patient: Not that I know of.
Doctor: (8) As far as you know __________________________ ?
Patient: Apart from me, no.
Doctor: (9) __________________________ ?
Patient: Yes, a boy and a girl. He’s fourteen and she’s twelve.

48.3 Study the social history of Mr Black. Write the questions the doctor asked to obtain the numbered information. Look at C opposite to help you.

Social history: Mr G. Black

Home – Lives in a detached house with a large garden\(^1\).

Family – Four children: two girls aged 3 and 4, two boys aged 6 and 8. All are being taught at home by his wife\(^2\).

Occupation – Manager of a DIY warehouse. Stressful job involving dealing with frequent staff problems and meeting monthly sales targets. Large mortgage\(^3\).

Personal interests – Has little time for exercise or interests outside work\(^4\).

Habits – Presently smoking 20 per day\(^5\). Has tried nicotine patches without success\(^6\). Average alcohol intake 3 units per day at weekends\(^7\). No problem with alcohol withdrawal\(^8\).

---

**Over to you**

Write a social history of a patient you know. Make a note of the questions you would ask to obtain the information.

Professional English in Use Medicine
Taking a history 3

Reviewing the systems

Once you know the main reason why the patient wants medical attention, it is sensible to ask about the systems to determine the patient's general state of health and to check for any additional problems. The patient should be encouraged to describe symptoms spontaneously. Initial questions should be open-ended and as general as possible. Follow up with more specific questions if needed, but avoid putting words in the patient's mouth.

- **Open-ended questions**
  - What's your appetite like?
  - How's your vision?

- **Closed questions**
  - Have you eaten today?
  - Is your vision ever blurry?

Asking about the central nervous system

1. Do you suffer from headaches?
2. Have you ever had a blackout?
3. What about fits?
4. Have you had any dizziness?
5. Do you get ringing in the ears?
6. Have you ever experienced any numbness or tingling in your hands or feet?
7. Do you have any problems sleeping?

Patient ideas, concerns and expectations

It is important during the consultation to give patients the chance to express their own ideas and concerns about their problem and to determine what their expectations are. The letters ICE (Ideas, Concerns and Expectations) are a way of remembering this. Typical questions are:

- **Ideas**
  - What do you know about this problem/condition/illness?
  - Do you have any ideas about this?
  - How do you think you got this problem?
  - What do you mean by ...?

- **Concerns**
  - What are your worries about this?
  - Do you have any concerns?
  - How might this affect the rest of your family?

- **Expectations**
  - What do you think will happen?
  - What do you expect from me?
  - What were you hoping we could do for you?

Phrasal verbs in history-taking

Phrasal verbs are often used in informal spoken English. Both patients and doctors may use them in consultations. A phrasal verb may have several meanings according to context.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring on</td>
<td>Is there anything special that brings on the pain?</td>
<td>cause, induce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring up</td>
<td>When you cough, do you bring up any phlegm?</td>
<td>expectorate, vomit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on</td>
<td>Carry on taking the painkillers for another week.</td>
<td>continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on</td>
<td>When does the pain come on?</td>
<td>commence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give up</td>
<td>My advice is to give up smoking.</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on</td>
<td>I've put on a lot of weight in the last month or so.</td>
<td>gain weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn out</td>
<td>She had all the tests and it turned out to be cancer.</td>
<td>happen in the end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn up</td>
<td>The rash just turned up out of nowhere.</td>
<td>appear unexpectedly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
49.1 Match the numbered questions (1–7) in B opposite to the symptoms for the central nervous system (a–f). There are two questions for one of the symptoms.

a headaches
b hearing symptoms
c fainted
d tingling (paraesthesiae)
e fits
f sleep patterns

49.2 Read the extract from a consultation. In the numbered questions (1–4), is the doctor encouraging the patient to talk about her ideas (I), her concerns (C) or her expectations (E)? Look at C opposite to help you.

Patient: I'm a bit concerned about my colic. I had a friend with something similar and it turned out to be more serious. It's got me worried.
Doctor: (1) What do you mean by colic?
Patient: A pain in the stomach.
Doctor: (2) What do you think might have brought this on?
Patient: It just seemed to come on. I don't know what it is.
Doctor: You said you were a bit worried because your friend had a similar problem. (3) What are your worries about this?
Patient: Yes, I had a friend. She turned out to have stomach cancer. She actually died in the end.
Doctor: (4) What were you hoping I could do for you today?
Patient: I just want to know that I don't have anything too serious.

49.3 Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs. Look at D opposite to help you.

1 The headaches ...................................................... in the morning.
2 However much I eat, I don't seem to ...................................................... any weight.
3 I've tried to ...................................................... smoking several times.
4 I'm so depressed I don't feel I can ......................................................
5 When I cough, I ...................................................... phlegm.
6 He thought he had stomach ache but it ...................................................... to be cancer.

Over to you

Write your own questions about the alimentary system using the checklist. Look at B opposite to help you. Look at Unit 20 if you need more help.

Condition of mouth
Difficulty with swallowing (dysphagia)
Indigestion
Heartburn
Abdominal pain
Weight loss
Change in bowel habit
Colour of motion (e.g. pale, dark, black, fresh blood)
Examining a patient

1. Introduce yourself, if necessary.
   Good morning, I'm Dr Mason.

2. Brief the patient on what he/she should expect in a clear and simple way.
   Do you know what we're going to do this morning?
   What we're going to do today is ...
   I'm going to examine your ... so I can find out what's causing this ...
   What we do is ...
   What happens is that ...
   I'll ask you to ...
   Are you ready?
   OK?

3. Instruct the patient in a clear but polite manner (see B below).

4. Show sensitivity to the patient's needs and respond to discomfort, reassuring if appropriate.
   You might feel a little bit of discomfort.
   This might hurt a little but I'll be quick.
   Tell me if it hurts.
   Let me know if it's sore.
   It will be over very quickly.
   It won't take long.
   You're doing very well.

5. Talk the patient through the procedure.
   I'm just going to ...
   First I'll ...
   Then I'll ...
   Now I'm going to ...
   You'll feel ...
   When it's over, I'll ...
   That's it. All over.

6. Share your findings with the patient.
   Well, I'm fairly certain you've got a ...
   One possibility is it could be what we call ...
   I haven't found anything to suggest any problems.

Giving instructions

When examining a patient, polite forms are often used for the initial instruction:

Could you bend forward as far as you can?
If you could cross your arms in front of your chest.
What I'd like to do is examine you standing up.

After that direct instructions may be used:

Stand with your feet together.
Lie perfectly still.

To soften an instruction:

Can you just turn to the side again?
Could you just lie on the couch?

For a list of verbs commonly used in instructions during examinations and investigations, see Appendix V on page 145.
50.1 Complete the instructions using suitable verbs. Look at Appendix V on page 145 to help you.

1. .......................................................... straight ahead and ................................................ your nose with your right forefinger; then with your left forefinger.
2. .......................................................... on the edge of the couch and ................................................ your legs hang loosely.
3. .......................................................... your eyelids tightly.
4. .......................................................... all your clothes ................................................ down to your underwear.
5. .......................................................... your chest with your chin.
6. .......................................................... slowly and look over your left shoulder.
7. .......................................................... on your side.
8. .......................................................... looking at me.
9. .......................................................... your sleeve.
10. .......................................................... the pin, not the light.

50.2 Write instructions to describe the movements in the pictures. Look at Appendix V on page 145 to help you.

50.3 Complete the instructions for a lumbar puncture with words and phrases from A and B opposite.

Morning Mr Maxwell, all right? Now, (1) .................................................. ? Well, (2) .................................................. put a little needle into your spine and take some fluid off your back to find out what's giving you these headaches. You might feel (3) .................................................. but it won't (4) .................................................. . When it's (5) .................................................. , we'll ask you to lie still for a few hours. Now Mr Maxwell, (6) .................................................. roll onto your left side? I want you to curl up into a little ball. So could you bend your knees up and tuck your head in for me. That's fine, lovely, OK. Now (7) .................................................. swab down your back with some antiseptic, all right? It'll be a bit cold. Are you (8) .................................................. ? Now I'm going to give you a local anaesthetic so it won't be sore. You'll feel just a slight jab. OK, scratch coming now. There. We'll wait for a few minutes for that to take effect. Right now, lie still, that's very important. Now (9) .................................................. me pressing down as I put the needle in. You're doing (10) .................................................. , OK. That's it. All (11) .................................................. .

Over to you
Think of an examination you frequently carry out. Write down the instructions you would give the patient.
Mental state examination

A Some symptoms of psychiatric disorders
- A delusion is a firmly held belief which is wrong but not open to argument. For example, a deluded patient may not accept that his psychiatrist is in fact a psychiatrist.
- Dementia is significant mental deterioration due to physical changes in the brain.
- Disorientation is mental confusion about time, place or identity.
- Hallucinations are apparently normal perceptions which happen without the appropriate stimulus. Any of the senses can be involved but especially vision and hearing.
- Illusions are misinterpretations of real stimuli.
- Obsessional symptoms are stereotyped ideas or impulses which the patient cannot resist. They include obsessional thoughts and obsessional rituals.

B Mood
When describing a patient's mood, it is better for doctors to use the patient's own words rather than their own subjective description of the patient's mood. Patients may say:

agitated restless anxious
frightened worried panicky

I've been feeling very low.

Patients may also use the following adjectives to describe their condition:

I get very confused about time, I can't remember what day it is.
People make me angry. They're so irritating.
I'm too embarrassed by my appearance to go out. I stay at home.
I get muddled when I'm shopping. I go out for milk and I come back with cheese.

C Typical questions from a mental state examination
1 Can you describe your mood at the moment?
2 How long have you been feeling like this?
3 Do you take pleasure in anything?
4 How are your energy levels?
5 What's your appetite like?
6 Have you noticed any change in your weight?
7 How are you sleeping?
8 Can you keep your mind on things?
9 What do you feel the future holds for you?
10 Have you ever felt that you don't want to go on?
11 Have you ever thought of suicide?
51.1 Complete the sentences. Look at A opposite to help you.
1 The patient believes that people can see through walls. He's suffering from ......................
2 The patient sees her long-dead sisters in her garden. She's suffering from ......................
3 The patient perceives tree branches as snakes. He's experiencing an ......................
4 The patient washes her hands five time before every meal. Her behaviour is ......................
5 The patient thinks the nurse is her daughter. She's ......................
6 A patient is confused about where she is. She's suffering from ......................

51.2 Complete the table with words from A opposite. Then complete the sentences below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confusion</td>
<td>deluded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depression</td>
<td>depressive (illness)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>disoriented (patient)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsession</td>
<td>(symptoms, thoughts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psychiatry</td>
<td>obsessive compulsive (disorder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(practitioner)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Patients in ...................... hospitals receive fewer get-well cards than others.
2 Impaired concentration is a characteristic symptom of ......................
3 The potential risk of suicide should always be assessed in the severely ......................
4 A ...................... person may be confused about who they are or where they are.

51.3 Write the doctor's questions in the mental state examination. Look at C opposite to help you.

Doctor: (1) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: I feel low. I'm not enjoying life.
Doctor: (2) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: No, nothing.
Doctor: (3) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: I feel run down. I'm really tired.
Doctor: (4) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: For months now.
Doctor: (5) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: I can't get to sleep and when I do sleep I wake up early.
Doctor: (6) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: I've got no appetite. I don't enjoy food.
Doctor: (7) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: I'm losing weight.
Doctor: (8) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: I can't remember where I've put anything.
Doctor: (9) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: Don't like thinking about it.
Doctor: (10) ..................................................................................... ?
Patient: I've thought about it but I don't have the courage.

Over to you
Describe a psychiatric case you have encountered in your professional career.
Explaining diagnosis and management

A

Explanations

The final part of a consultation is the explanation which should cover:

1 The diagnosis – identification of a disease from its signs and symptoms.
   - You’re suffering from ...
   - You’ve developed ...
   - You have ...
   - This is (mainly) because ...
   - This is why ...

2 The management plan, including investigations and treatment.
   - I’ll make you an appointment with ...
   - I’m going to start you on medication to ...
   - I’m going to have you admitted to ...
   - I’ll arrange for you to ...
   - You’ll be given ...
   - I expect you’ll have ...
   - They may advise ...

3 General advice about any change in lifestyle that may be needed, for example giving up smoking or drinking less alcohol.
   - The nurse will give you advice on ...
   - You should try to give up ...
   - I want you to ...
   - It’s important that you ...

4 The prognosis – what is likely to happen because of a disease, stressing that nothing is certain.
   - I expect the treatment will ...
   - Hopefully we can ...
   - We can never be absolutely certain about ...
   - You should remain optimistic.

5 Question time – where the patient can ask questions about his/her illness.
   - Do you have any questions?
   - Is there anything you’d like to ask?

B

Using lay terms in explanations

Explanations should be given in words the patient will understand, avoiding medical jargon. Using lay terms – words familiar to people without medical knowledge – can help patients understand explanations. For a list of some common lay terms for conditions, parts of the body and medication, see Appendix VI on page 146.

C

An explanation of angina

Having examined you, I'm confident that you're suffering from angina.

The heart is a pump. The more you do physically, the harder it has to work. But as we get older, the blood vessels which supply oxygen to the heart begin to harden and get furred up, so they become narrower. They can’t supply all the oxygen the heart needs. The result is the pain you feel as angina.

Because you’re experiencing pain at rest as well as on exertion, I’m going to have you admitted to the coronary care unit right away so that your treatment can start at once. You’ll be given drugs to ease the pain and I expect you’ll have an angiogram. They may advise surgery or angioplasty – that’s a way of opening up the blood vessels to the heart so they can provide more oxygen.

You should try to give up smoking. You won’t be able to smoke at all in hospital so it’s a good time to stop.

I expect the treatment will improve your pain at least and may get rid of it completely. We can never be absolutely certain about the future but you should remain optimistic.

Do you have any questions?
52.1 Match the stages of a consultation (1–4) with the sentences used (a–f). Look at A and C opposite to help you.

1 diagnosis
2 management
3 general advice
4 prognosis

a I'm going to have you admitted to the coronary care unit.
b I expect the treatment will improve your pain at least and may get rid of it completely.
c Having examined you, I'm confident that you're suffering from angina.
d You should try to give up smoking.
e We can never be absolutely certain about the future but you should remain optimistic.
f You'll be given drugs to ease the pain and I expect you'll have an angiogram.

52.2 Replace the underlined words and phrases with appropriate lay terms. Look at Appendix VI on page 146 to help you.

1 Mr Harris, I'm afraid your wife's suffered an acute cerebrovascular event.
2 The urethra runs through the middle of the prostate.
3 The reason for your nocturia is that your prostate is enlarged.
4 Do you suffer from dyspnoea when you exert yourself?
5 I'm going to give you an analgesic and an anti-inflammatory for your sprained ankle.
6 I'm putting you on anti-depressants for a short time to help you get back to normal life.

52.3 Complete the explanation of diabetes. Look at A opposite to help you.

You've (1) ......................... Type 2 diabetes. This is (2) ..............................................
very overweight. Your body isn't producing enough insulin. (3) ................................. you feel so
thirsty and why you pass urine so frequently. It's also the reason you have this very itchy rash
and you have a problem with your eyes.

The nurse will (4) ......................... your diet and I'll (5) ................................. a dietician. I'm (6) ................................. tablets to control your high blood sugar. You don't need
insulin right now but it is possible you might need it in the future.

You (7) ................................. lose weight and I (8) ................................. see
a podiatrist. It's important with diabetes that you take good care of your feet. You should also
see your optician every six months for eye checks.

Diabetes is a serious condition and can affect your heart, blood pressure, circulation, kidneys
and vision but we can limit these problems by controlling your blood sugar.

No case of diabetes can be described as mild. I'll (9) ................................. to attend the diabetic
clinic every two months so we can check your progress.

(10) ................................. reduce this to six monthly visits once your condition is under control.
Is there (11) ................................. ?

Over to you

Explain a condition of your choice to a patient. Your explanation should cover the points
listed in A opposite and use lay terms where possible.
Discussing treatment

A
Offering options
When discussing options with a patient, doctors may say:

There are a couple of options we can use. The first option is to try tablets like Prozac that lift you up a bit. The other option is counselling.

It can be caused by diet or stress. There are some quite simple tests we can do. If you're still concerned, we can refer you to a hospital.

B
Advising a course of action
When advising a course of action, doctors may say:

Some time off work might help. If you felt that would be helpful, you could take a week off and see how you felt after that.

Carry on drinking lots of fluids.

If you still have some pain, you can keep taking paracetamol.

Other things might help, like raising the head of your bed. That's one of the simple things we could start you off with. You said you haven't tried indigestion remedies. That's something you could try.

C
Advising patients to avoid something
When advising patients to avoid something, doctors may say:

There are a few things about your lifestyle we could address. Perhaps cut down on the amount you're drinking. Giving up smoking would help.

Cut out fatty foods.

You should try to avoid tight clothing, sitting in deep armchairs and bending, especially after meals.

D
Warnings
When a doctor wants to warn a patient that the consequence of ignoring the advice could be serious, he or she may say:

If you aren't feeling better in 7 to 14 days, you really must come back and see me again.

If you keep damaging it, you're going to end up with a long-term problem.

If you feel that things aren't settling, aren't getting back to normal, it's important that you see me again.

It's very important you don't stop taking the tablets suddenly or your symptoms will return.
53.1 Complete the advice. Look at A, B, C and D opposite to help you.

1. If you .................................................. smoking, you increase the risk of lung cancer and heart disease.
2. Your health would improve if you .................................................. alcohol completely.
3. You could .................................................. with a serious drug problem.
4. I'm going to .................................................. you .................................................. with some tablets. If they don't help, we'll need to think about surgery.
5. .................................................. on the amount of salt you take with your food.
6. I expect things will .................................................. in a few days and you'll be able to get up.
7. Try to .................................................. situations where you feel stressed.

53.2 Match the two parts of the sentences. Look at A, B, C and D opposite to help you.

1. If you still have pain,
2. If you find it difficult to give up smoking,
3. Your symptoms will return
4. If you can't get to sleep,
5. Come back and see me again
6. If you're still concerned,
   a. try to avoid caffeine later in the day.
   b. if you find your breathlessness has increased.
   c. keep taking paracetamol.
   d. I can refer you to a consultant.
   e. if you start smoking again.
   f. I can arrange for nicotine replacement therapy.

53.3 Advise a patient with high blood pressure about physical activity. Look at the information in the table, and at C opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Advice for people with heart disease or high blood pressure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Do</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate, rhythmic (aerobic) exercise such as brisk walking,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cycling or swimming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any regular physical activity that you are used to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat a low cholesterol diet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You should avoid heavy digging. .................................................................
You shouldn't do any heavy digging. .........................................................
You could try brisk walking. .................................................................

**Over to you**

A patient of yours, Mrs White, aged 44, has been complaining of very heavy periods. An ultrasound scan of her pelvis shows she has a small fibroid in her uterus. She asks about treatment. These options are possible:

1. Do nothing. The fibroid will shrink when she becomes menopausal.
2. See a gynaecologist who may advise removal of the fibroid or a hysterectomy.

Practise what you would say to Mrs White to advise her of these options.
Principles of giving bad news

1. Give warning.
   I'm afraid your test results aren't very good.
   I'm sorry to have to tell you that the news isn't good.

2. Choose an appropriate setting and have a friend or relative of the patient present.
3. Take time.
4. Use appropriate language.
5. Emphasize the positive.
   There's still a lot we can do to help you.
   Chemotherapy will make you more comfortable.

6. Discuss the prognosis.
   One can never be certain about these things but I'd say it's a matter of months rather than years.

7. Supplement the verbal message.
   I'd like to record this consultation so you can listen again if anything isn't clear.

8. Arrange a follow-up session.
   I'd like to see you again next week.
   Can you come in again next week?

9. Confirm that the patient understands.
   Could you tell me what we're going to do for you?
   Is everything clear to you?

A consultant medical oncologist's report

Mr Harry Scott

Diagnosis: Previous pancreatic cancer

I reviewed Mr Scott in the Oncology Clinic today. He has been less well and has lost 18 kg in the past few months. Unfortunately, his CT scan shows an area of ill-defined low attenuation in the tail of the pancreas. Although this is consistent with focal pancreatitis, the general feeling at the Multidisciplinary Team meeting was that this represents recurrent disease. This is especially likely in view of his clinical deterioration and rising CA19.9. I discussed this with Mr Scott and his wife. He was obviously disappointed with the scan results but still tries to remain positive. We discussed the fact that surgery wasn't an option and symptom control was important. We also discussed the role of palliative Gemcitabine. The potential benefits are small but it is usually well tolerated and he was keen to proceed with this. I will therefore book him into Ward 2 to start treatment in the next few weeks and have re-checked his bloods today. In the meantime, I would be very grateful if you would refer him to your dietician. He himself is keen for this to happen. We will see him back in Clinic once his treatment has started.
54.1 Complete the extract from the oncologist’s consultation with Mr Scott. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

Oncologist: Mr Scott, (1) ........................................ so you and Mrs Scott can play back later anything that may not be clear to you today.

(2) ........................................ that the scan results aren’t very good. It’s likely that you’ve got a recurrence of cancer in your pancreas. That would explain why you’ve been feeling so tired, and your loss of appetite and weight.

Mr Scott: Will I need surgery?

Oncologist: Surgery (3) ........................................ at this stage. Although we can’t operate, there is still (4) ........................................ . You’ve got tablets for pain relief and we can give you something stronger if you need it. We can also start you on a course of chemotherapy to help with your symptoms. This won’t cure you but it will (5) ........................................ . It’s unusual to have any unpleasant side effects with this kind of chemotherapy. I’d like you too to see a dietician for some advice on what to eat and to help get your appetite back.

Mr Scott: What’s my life expectancy? How long have I got?

Oncologist: One can (6) ........................................ . People with this condition vary a great deal. I would be wrong to give you a definite time scale but I’d say (7) ........................................ . (8) ........................................ all this, but my feeling is it’s always best to be honest with people and then you know what’s what.

If you’re in agreement, I’d like to (9) ........................................ Ward 2 to start your chemo. You’ll need to come in every week for the next month.

Is everything clear to you? (10) ........................................ treatment we’re going to give you? Are there any particular worries you have?

I’ll be seeing you regularly to keep an eye on things so you can ask me any other questions you may have.

54.2 Complete the sentences with words from the box. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

for into to with

1 These results are consistent ................................ recurrent cancer.
2 His GP referred him ........................................ an oncologist.
3 The patient was disappointed ........................................ the news.
4 The prognosis was discussed ........................................ the patient and his wife.
5 The patient was booked ........................................ the ward for further chemotherapy.
6 He was keen ........................................ this to happen.

Over to you

What would you say to a patient who has a non-malignant brain tumour, about four centimetres in diameter?
Data presentation 1

A Referring to a table or figure
In an article, you can write:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure 1</th>
<th>Table 1</th>
<th>shows X.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

X is shown in

In a presentation, you can use the same expressions, or you can say:

As you can see in Table 1 ...

B Comparing variables
When you refer to a table you will often need to compare one variable with another:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X was</th>
<th>twice three times</th>
<th>as</th>
<th>effective common</th>
<th>as</th>
<th>Y.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Or you may need to compare the same variable at different times:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The number of X in 2000 was</th>
<th>double triple / three times</th>
<th>that in 1990.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>There was a</th>
<th>twofold / threefold</th>
<th>increase in the number of X between 1990 and 2000.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The number of X increased</th>
<th>twofold / threefold</th>
<th>between 1990 and 2000.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The number of X</th>
<th>doubled trebled</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

C Approximating
When referring to the data presented on slides, numbers are often rounded, for example 41.3 becomes 41 or even 40. When this is done, it is common to use expressions of approximation:

Side-effects were reported by

about
around
approximately
roughly
some

forty patients.

Numbers are frequently presented as fractions or percentages, even when the exact number is given.

Roughly two-thirds of patients reported side-effects.

Fifty-five, or some two-thirds, of patients reported side-effects.

When you want to emphasize a number, for example 9.8%, you can say:

almost 10%
nearly 10%
more than 9%
just under 10%

over 9%

and when you want to make the number seem small:

less than 10%
55.1 Complete the description of the data in the table. Look at A and B opposite to help you.

Table 1: Incidence of ulcer perforation 1967–1982

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>&gt;65</th>
<th>65–74</th>
<th>&gt;75</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perforations (Women)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of prescriptions (Men)</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perforations (Men)</td>
<td>1967</td>
<td>1982</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1 (1) trends in the frequency of hospital admission for perforated peptic ulcer in the United Kingdom (2) with changes in the annual prescription rates for non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. For women over 65 the annual number of prescriptions increased (3) from 1967 to 1982, during which rates of perforation of duodenal ulcers (4) for those aged 65 to 74 and more than (5) for those aged 75 and over. For men over 65, prescriptions showed a similar increase. Although perforation rates were actually lower for those aged 65 to 74 in 1982, there was a (6) increase in those aged 75 and above.

(BMJ 1986:292: 514 Amended with permission from the BMJ Publishing Group)

55.2 The data in the table is adapted from an article entitled ‘Alcohol drinking in middle age’. Choose the correct words to complete the description below. Look at C opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alcohol drinking</th>
<th>Never (n=300)</th>
<th>Infrequent (n=423)</th>
<th>Frequent (n=295)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. (%), of smokers</td>
<td>54 (18.0)</td>
<td>193 (45.6)</td>
<td>204 (69.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old age measurements (follow up)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. (%), who had myocardial infarction</td>
<td>41 (13.7)</td>
<td>60 (14.2)</td>
<td>54 (18.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results of cognitive assessment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. (%), with no impairment (controls)</td>
<td>261 (87)</td>
<td>391 (92.4)</td>
<td>257 (87.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. (%), with mild cognitive impairment</td>
<td>25 (8.3)</td>
<td>15 (3.5)</td>
<td>21 (7.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. (%), with dementia</td>
<td>14 (4.7)</td>
<td>17 (4)</td>
<td>17 (5.8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only 54, or (1) (under/less) than 20%, of the non-drinkers smoked compared with 204, or (2) (almost/over) 70%, of the frequent drinkers. 41, or just (3) (less/under) 14% of the non-drinkers had had a myocardial infarction at the end of the follow-up period, compared with 54, or (4) (almost/over) 18%, of the frequent drinkers. At the end of the follow-up period, (5) (about/over) 90% in all three groups had no cognitive impairment. There was mild impairment in (6) (under/around) 8% of the non-drinkers, and in 7% of the frequent drinkers, but in (7) (less/under) 4% of the infrequent drinkers. 14, or (8) (approximately/over) 5%, of the non-drinkers had dementia, while 17, or 4% of the infrequent drinkers, and (9) (more than/nearly) 6% of the frequent drinkers had dementia.

(BMJ 2004:329: 539 Amended with permission from the BMJ Publishing Group)

Over to you
Some people feel that approximating is unscientific. What do you think?
A. Line graphs
Notice the verbs used to describe changes over a period of time.

- rise
- increase
- go up
- fall
- drop
- decrease
- go down
- reach a peak
- remain the same

Notice the difference:

- rise sharply
- steeply
- rapidly
- rise steadily
- gradually

B. Pie charts
Pie charts are an effective way of showing the relationship of parts to a whole: the complete circle or pie represents the whole, while the parts are represented by segments or slices. In this pie chart, which shows a health authority's costs, the orange slice represents costs of hospital services. So, hospital services account for 60% of the costs.

C. Describing trends
The bar chart below shows the prevalence of HIV in different countries.

HIV rates have fallen in some countries as a result of safer sex, but the overall trend is an increase in HIV infections. The steepest increases in HIV infections occurred in Eastern Europe, Central Asia and East Asia; but sub-Saharan Africa continued to be the most affected part of the world. Adult infection rates in Kenya have dropped from a peak of 10 per cent in the late 1990s to 7 per cent in 2003. HIV rates in pregnant women in Zimbabwe also fell over the past two years.
56.1 Complete the table with words from A opposite. Put a stress mark in front of the stressed syllable of two-syllable words. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'decrease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

56.2 Choose the correct words to complete the description of the bar chart. Look at A and C opposite to help you.

Figure 6 shows that the overall number of cases of HIV (1) ................................ (dropped / remained the same) yearly until 1988, then (2) ................................ (rose/dropped)
(3) ................................ (sharply/gradually). Cases in heterosexual men and women (4) ................................ (increased/tell) (5) ................................ (steeply/steadily), especially for people exposed abroad. The number of infected people injecting drugs (6) ................................ (fell/rose) after (7) ................................ (reaching a peak / dropping) in 1987. This may be because of the development of needle exchange schemes.
Mother-to-infant transmission (8) ................................ (represented/accounted) for a small number of cases. Careful management of labour greatly reduced the number in the late 1990s.

56.3 Which type of graph would best represent the following data?
1 Birth rates in the UK from 1980 to 2010
2 Incapacity due to five different causes from 1995 to 2003
3 Sources of ionizing radiation in the UK

Over to you

Draw a pie chart or bar chart which shows the approximate costs of the health service in your country. Practise describing the chart.
Research articles

A

The structure of a research article

Research articles are typically divided into four main sections:

- **Introduction**
- **Methods**
- **Results**
- **Discussion**

This is sometimes called the IMRaD structure of articles.

The **Introduction** contains background information; in other words, it reminds the reader what is already known about the subject. It includes information about previous studies, and explains what has not been investigated previously. Finally, there is usually a statement of the objective, or purpose of the research (why they did it).

In the case of clinical research, the **Methods** section gives details of the people who were studied – the participants in the research. The method section also contains information about any intervention carried out, for example medication, advice, operations. It gives details of the steps taken in the study, how the participants were chosen, and includes the main things measured, such as blood levels. Finally, there is information about statistical analysis.

The **Results** section tells what was found, the **findings** of the study.

The **Discussion** section contains explanations, and claims for the importance of the study. It may also list limitations, or parts of the study which were unsatisfactory, and suggest what research needs to be done in the future. There is usually a **Conclusion**, which is sometimes a separate section.

At the end of most articles, there is a short section called **Acknowledgements**. In this the authors thank people who have helped them in their research. Finally, there is a list of **References** – the books and articles which the authors have used.

B

**Objectives**

Statements about objectives often contain the following verbs:

- **assess**
  - We assessed whether ...
- **determine**
  - The aim of our study was to determine whether ...
- **investigate**
  - We investigated the ...
- **evaluate**
  - This study evaluated the ...

C

**Main findings**

The Discussion section usually begins with a summary of the main findings. This is related to the objective of the study. Typical verbs include:

- **show**
  - We have shown that ...
- **confirm**
  - Our study confirmed that ...
- **provide evidence**
  - These findings provide strong evidence that ...

If the results are less certain:

- **suggest**
  - These results suggest that ...
- **fail to**
  - This study failed to show that ...
57.1 Read the eight extracts from an article in the British Medical Journal entitled 'Paternal age and schizophrenia: a population based cohort study'. Decide which section of the article each extract comes from. There are two extracts from each of the four sections. Look at Unit 46 again if you need more help.

1 People with older fathers were more likely to lose their parents before they reached the age of 18 years.
2 Using a large Swedish record linkage database, we investigated the association between paternal age and schizophrenia in offspring.
3 We used Cox's proportional hazards models to assess the influence of paternal age on psychosis.
4 Our cohort comprised 754,330 people born in Sweden between 1973 and 1980 and still alive and resident in Sweden at the age of 16 years.
5 Our findings confirm an association between increased paternal age and schizophrenia in offspring, which remained even after we controlled for a wide range of potential confounding factors.
6 There is growing evidence that factors operating at different points in life contribute to an individual's risk of developing schizophrenia.
7 The main limitation of our analysis is that case ascertainment was based on people admitted to hospital only with diagnoses recorded on an administrative database.
8 Table 1 shows the characteristics of subjects in relation to the age of their father.

(BMJ/2004;325:100 Amended with permission from the BMJ Publishing Group)

57.2 Look at the research questions (1–4) and write a statement of the objective of each study, using an appropriate form of the verb in brackets. Look at B opposite to help you.

1 Can calcium and vitamin D supplementation reduce the risk of fractures in postmenopausal women? (assess)
2 Does the way doctors dress influence patients' confidence and trust in them? (determine)
3 Is there a risk of herpes virus 8 (HHV-8) transmission by blood transfusion? (evaluate)
4 Is there an association between never being married and increased risk of death? (investigate)

57.3 Now write a sentence about the main finding in each of the studies in 57.2 above, assuming a result as shown in brackets below. Look at C opposite to help you.

1 (no)
2 (yes)
3 (yes)
4 (uncertain)

Over to you

When you read a research article, which section do you read first? Why?
Abstracts

Structured abstracts

An abstract is a type of summary, and may be found in special collections of abstracts, such as Medline, or in conference programmes, as well as at the beginning of a research article. Many journals require contributors (authors wishing to publish their articles in the journal) to provide a structured abstract – an abstract which is divided into specific sections.

The BMJ abstract

The British Medical Journal structured abstract is divided into the following sections:

Objective
Design
Setting
Subjects
Main outcome measure
Results
Conclusion

Here is an example:

AGE AT RETIREMENT AND LONG TERM SURVIVAL OF AN INDUSTRIAL POPULATION: PROSPECTIVE COHORT STUDY

OBJECTIVE
To assess whether early retirement is associated with better survival.

DESIGN
Long term prospective cohort study.

SETTING
Petroleum and petrochemical industry, United States.

SUBJECTS
Past employees of Shell Oil who retired at ages 55, 60, and 65 between 1 January 1973 and 31 December 2003.

MAIN OUTCOME MEASURE
Hazard ratio of death adjusted for sex, year of entry to study, and socioeconomic status.

RESULTS
Subjects who retired early at 55 and who were still alive at 65 had a significantly higher mortality than those who retired at 65 (hazard ratio 1.37, 95% confidence interval 1.09 to 1.73). Mortality was also significantly higher for subjects in the first 10 years after retirement at 55 compared with those who continued working (1.89, 1.58 to 2.27). After adjustment, mortality was similar between those who retired at 60 and those who retired at 65 (1.06, 0.92 to 1.22). Mortality did not differ for the first five years after retirement at 60 compared with continuing work at 60 (1.04, 0.82 to 1.31).

CONCLUSIONS
Retiring early at 55 or 60 was not associated with better survival than retiring at 65 in a cohort of past employees of the petrochemical industry. Mortality was higher in employees who retired at 55 than in those who continued working.

Note: Slightly different headings are used in some journals. For example, The New England Journal of Medicine divides articles into Background, Methods, Results and Conclusions. You must consult the Guide to Contributors for the precise requirements of the journal you wish to contribute to.

Professional English in Use Medicine
58.1 Complete the sentences. Look at B opposite to help you.
1. The ________________ is the aim or purpose of the research.
2. The ________________ is the location – the country, or part of a country (e.g. a hospital, school, etc.).
3. The ________________ are the people that the researchers studied.
4. An ________________ is a result.
5. The ________________ is the type of study, for example randomized controlled trial.

58.2 Answer the questions about the abstract in B opposite.
1. Who took part in the study?
2. What was the aim of the study?
3. Where was it carried out?
4. What did they measure?
5. What type of study was it?
6. According to this study, does retiring early prolong life?

58.3 The sections of the abstract below are in the wrong order, and the headings have been removed. Decide the correct order, and give each section a title from B opposite.
2. History of asthma, wheezy bronchitis, or wheezing obtained from interview with subjects’ parents at ages 7, 11, and 16 and reported at interview by subjects at ages 23 and 33.
3. To describe the incidence […] of wheezing illness from birth to age 33 and the relation of incidence to perinatal, medical, social, environmental, and lifestyle factors.
4. The cumulative incidence of wheezing illness was 18% by age 7, 24% by age 16, and 43% by age 33. Incidence during childhood was strongly and independently associated with pneumonia, hay fever, and eczema. […] Incidence from age 17 to 33 was associated strongly with active cigarette smoking and a history of hay fever. […]
5. Atopy and active cigarette smoking are major influences on the incidence and recurrence of wheezing during adulthood.
6. 18,559 people born on 3–9 March 1958. 5801 (31%) contributed information at ages 7, 11, 16, 23, and 33 years.
7. Prospective longitudinal study.

(BMJ 2005; Amended with permission from the BMJ Publishing Group)

58.4 Some journals use different headings to those in the BMJ. Match the headings (1–5) to the corresponding BMJ headings (a–e).
1. Findings
2. Purpose
3. Background
4. Interpretation
5. Participants
a. Introduction
b. Objective
c. Subjects
d. Results
e. Conclusion
Conference presentations

A The structure of a presentation
Conference (or congress) presentations are typically divided into IMRaD sections (see Unit 57).

If the presentation has a different form, the speaker may start by outlining its structure. This helps to orientate the audience:

I'll begin by ...  
First of all, I'll ...  
I'll then ...  
Secondly, I'll ...  
Finally, I'll ...

Many speakers like to start a new section with a signal:

Now, ...
Moving on to X, ...
As far as X is concerned, ...

An alternative technique is to use a question:

How did we investigate this problem? (to introduce Method)
What did we find? (to introduce Results)
How does this compare with previous studies? (to introduce Discussion)

B The introduction
A formal way of beginning is:

I'd like to present to you the results of our research into ...

Many speakers prefer to begin in a less formal way:

When we first began to look into the question of X, we thought ...

You may wish to begin with a generalisation or reference to shared knowledge:

It is well known that ...

Many studies have shown that ...

X has established clearly that ...

C Signalling
Other signals that you may wish to give include:

Emphasizing
- I'd like to emphasize ...

Listing points
- Firstly, ...
- Secondly, ...

Referring to slides
- This slide shows ...

Giving examples
- For instance ...
- ... such as ...

Contrasting
- On the other hand ...
- In contrast ...
- However, ...

D The conclusion
It is important to end well, for example by summing up the main conclusions.

So,  
In conclusion,  
To sum up,  
Finally,  

we can see ...
I'd like to say end by ...
these studies show ...

126 Professional English in Use Medicine
59.1 Here are some extracts from a presentation on carbon monoxide poisoning. After announcing his topic, the speaker talked about the pathophysiology of CO poisoning, then the possible sources of the gas, and finally diagnosis and treatment. Put the extracts in the correct order.

1 There is, however, no evidence at all that giving steroids in pharmacological doses is of any proven prophylactic value. ...
2 How do we diagnose it? The early clinical appearances of carbon monoxide poisoning can be very non-specific. ...
3 So, the actual diagnosis of the condition can be very difficult. ...
4 I'd like to tell you about some of our experiences in relation to carbon monoxide poisoning. ...
5 On the slide here, you'll see that there are a variety of sources of carbon monoxide, such as car exhausts, fires, and so on. ...
6 First of all, I want to concentrate on smoke from fires as one of the most important sources of carbon monoxide. ...
7 Now, in relation to the treatment of carbon monoxide poisoning, 100 per cent oxygen administered through a tight-fitting face mask or endotracheal tube is essential. ...
8 I think it's important to emphasize that the presence of cherry-red mucous membranes is a very, very poor sign. ...
9 Now, you will remember that carbon monoxide strongly binds with haemoglobin to produce carboxyhaemoglobin. ...
10 The only accurate way of detecting whether the patient has been exposed to carbon monoxide is to measure carboxyhaemoglobin in, usually, the venous blood. ...

59.2 Write the word or phrase used by the speaker in the presentation in 59.1 above next to its function. Look at B, C and D opposite to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Emphasizing</th>
<th>Listing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exemplifying</td>
<td>Summing up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrasting</td>
<td>Changing topic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Referring to a slide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Announcing the topic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Over to you

What makes a good presentation, in your opinion? Think about:

- loudness of voice
- speed of delivery
- use of emphasis and pausing
- eye contact with the audience
- body language – posture and gestures
- visual aids.
Case presentations

A Sections of a case presentation

In a case presentation, a doctor presents the details of a patient’s case to colleagues at a clinical meeting in a hospital. A typical case presentation is divided into the following sections:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Example language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>I’d like to present Mr Simpson,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient’s age and occupation</td>
<td>a 34-year-old plumber,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presenting symptom(s) and</td>
<td>who presented with a one-month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duration</td>
<td>history of breathlessness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated symptoms</td>
<td>He also complained of ankle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>swelling which he’d had for two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past medical history</td>
<td>There was no relevant past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social history</td>
<td>He was married with one son. He</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>smoked 25 cigarettes a day and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>drank about 50 units of alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family history</td>
<td>His father died of myocardial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>infarction at the age of 42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>His mother was alive and well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Findings on examination</td>
<td>On examination, he was obese ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigation results</td>
<td>We did a chest X-ray which showed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis</td>
<td>So we thought he had ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
<td>We gave him intravenous furosemide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outcome – what happened</td>
<td>He responded to treatment and was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>discharged home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B Bedside presentation

A less formal type of case presentation can take place at a patient’s bed, for example during ward rounds, when the house officer presents a new patient to the consultant; or in a teaching ward round, when a medical student presents a case to the tutor. This type of presentation begins less formally:

This is Mr Simpson. He’s 34, and he’s a plumber. He came into hospital yesterday, sent by his GP. He’s complaining of breathlessness, which he’s had for one month ...

C Slides

In a formal presentation, the main points are usually summarized on slides.

Mr Simpson 34, plumber

c/o dysepnca 1/12; ankle swelling 2/52
SH married with 1 son
25 cigs/day; 50 units alcohol/week
PH nil relevant
FH father d. 42 MI; mother a&w
OE obese; 2 spider naevi on chest
P 110/min reg.
BP 100/60
CXR enlarged heart and bilat. pleural effusions
60.1 Write the abbreviations in words. Look at Look at A and C opposite and at Appendix II on page 131 to help you.

c/o .................................................. 
2/52 .................................................. 
PH .................................................. 
FH .................................................. 
MI .................................................. 
BP .................................................. 
I/12 .................................................. 
il .................................................. 
SH .................................................. 
a&w .................................................. 
OE .................................................. 
CXR .................................................. 

60.2 Put the sections of a short informal case presentation in the correct order. Look at A opposite to help you.

1 Mr Collins is a 60-year-old security guard.
2 There was no relevant previous medical history.
3 He smokes 20 cigarettes per day and drinks 15-20 units of alcohol each week.
4 On examination, there was marked tenderness around the lower legs above the ankles and knees. There were crackles at the left base posteriorly in the chest. There was nothing else abnormal to find on examination except for clubbing of the fingers.
5 He presented with a six-week history of pain in the legs.
6 Chest X-ray showed consolidation in the left lower lobe. Bronchoscopy and biopsy showed adenocarcinoma of the lung and computed tomography (CT) scan showed that this was not resectable.
7 Treatment with chemotherapy has resulted in temporary improvement in the chest X-ray but the leg pain has continued to prove difficult to control.
8 The pain, which was located around the ankles, had been increasing in intensity and was associated with local tenderness.
9 On routine questioning, he said that he had had a morning cough with small amounts of white sputum for many years. He produced, once, some streaks of blood in the sputum.

60.3 Read the presentation below and make notes for a slide. Look at C opposite to help you.

I'd like to present Mr McNamara who's a 63-year-old taxi driver who presented to the Outpatient Clinic with a three-month history of increasing shortness of breath and ankle swelling. He had a chronic cough with purulent sputum and occasional haemoptysis. Of note in his past medical history was that he'd had a partial gastrectomy in 1980.

On examination, he was pale. He was afebrile. He had leg oedema, but no clubbing or lymphadenopathy. And examination of his chest was entirely normal. His liver was palpable 5 centimetres below the costal margin, and was smooth and non-tender, and there was also a scar from his previous operation.

Over to you
Make notes about a patient you know and practice presenting him or her.
1 ear
2 cheek
3 jaw (mandible)
4 neck
5 shoulder
6 armpit (axilla)
7 upper arm
8 elbow
9 loin
10 forearm
11 buttock
12 wrist
13 hand
14 thumb
15 finger
16 thigh
17 calf
18 leg
19 foot
20 toe
21 hair
22 forehead
23 nose
24 chin
25 Adam's apple (laryngeal prominence)
26 chest (thorax)
27 nipple
28 breast
29 stomach, tummy, belly (abdomen)
30 navel, belly button (umbilicus)
31 hip
32 palm
33 groin (inguinal region)
34 genitals (penis and testicles)
35 knee (patella = kneecap)
36 shin
37 ankle
38 big toe
39 sole
40 heel
## Medical abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation or symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#</td>
<td>fracture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↑</td>
<td>increased/raised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↓</td>
<td>decreased/reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>♀</td>
<td>female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>♂</td>
<td>male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μmol/L</td>
<td>micromols per litre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μg</td>
<td>microgram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/12</td>
<td>1 month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/52</td>
<td>1 week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$10^9$/L</td>
<td>times ten to the power nine per litre [note superscript 9]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A&amp;E</td>
<td>accident and emergency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a&amp;w</td>
<td>alive and well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.c.</td>
<td>before meals/food (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.m.</td>
<td>in the morning (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A:G</td>
<td>albumen globulin ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AB</td>
<td>apex beat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC</td>
<td>airways, breathing, circulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abd / abdo.</td>
<td>abdomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACTH</td>
<td>adrenocorticotropic hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>atrial fibrillation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFP</td>
<td>alphafetoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHA</td>
<td>Area Health Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI</td>
<td>aortic incompetence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIDS</td>
<td>acquired immunodeficiency disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AJ</td>
<td>ankle jerk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alk. phos.</td>
<td>alkaline phosphatase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT</td>
<td>alanine aminotransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMA</td>
<td>American Medical Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AN</td>
<td>antenatal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AP</td>
<td>antero-posterior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APH</td>
<td>antepartum haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARM</td>
<td>artificial rupture of membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS</td>
<td>alimentary system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASD</td>
<td>atrial septal defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASO</td>
<td>antistreptolysin O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATS</td>
<td>antitetanus serum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVF</td>
<td>augmented voltage foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVL</td>
<td>augmented voltage left arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVR</td>
<td>augmented voltage right arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.d. / b.i.d.</td>
<td>twice a day (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAL</td>
<td>blood alcohol level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BB</td>
<td>bed bath; blanket bath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BBB</td>
<td>bundle branch block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC</td>
<td>bone conduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCG</td>
<td>bacille Calmette-Guérin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF</td>
<td>breast fed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BI</td>
<td>bone injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BID</td>
<td>brought in dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIPP</td>
<td>bismuth iodoform and paraffin paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BM</td>
<td>bowel movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMA</td>
<td>British Medical Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMJ</td>
<td>British Medical Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMR</td>
<td>basal metabolic rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMSc</td>
<td>Bachelor of Medical Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNF</td>
<td>British National Formulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNO</td>
<td>bowels not opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BO</td>
<td>bowels opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
<td>blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPC</td>
<td>British Pharmaceutical Codex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPD</td>
<td>bi-parietal diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS</td>
<td>breath sounds; bowel sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS</td>
<td>Bachelor of Surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BWt</td>
<td>birth weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>head presentation; centigrade; Celsius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c / c.</td>
<td>with (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.c.</td>
<td>with meals/food (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c/o</td>
<td>complains of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA / Ca</td>
<td>cancer; carcinoma; calcium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CABG</td>
<td>coronary artery bypass graft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>coronary artery disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capt.</td>
<td>head presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAT</td>
<td>coaxial or computerised axial tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBT</td>
<td>cognitive behavioural therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCF</td>
<td>congestive cardiac failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCT</td>
<td>Certificate of Completion of Training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFT</td>
<td>complement fixation test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ChB</td>
<td>Bachelor of Surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHF</td>
<td>chronic heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chr CF</td>
<td>chronic cardiac failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS</td>
<td>central nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO</td>
<td>casualty officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COAD</td>
<td>chronic obstructive airways disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COP</td>
<td>change of plaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPN</td>
<td>community psychiatric nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creps</td>
<td>crepitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSF</td>
<td>cerebrospinal fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSSD</td>
<td>Central Sterile Supply Depot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSU</td>
<td>catheter specimen of urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSW</td>
<td>clinical support worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>cerebral tumour; coronary thrombosis; computerized tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV</td>
<td>cardiovascular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVA</td>
<td>cardiovascular accident; cerebrovascular accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVS</td>
<td>cardiovascular system; cerebrovascular system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cx</td>
<td>cervix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CXR</td>
<td>chest X-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>divorced; died/dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D&amp;C</td>
<td>dilatation and curettage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D&amp;V</td>
<td>diarrhoea and vomiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD</td>
<td>dangerous drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDA</td>
<td>Dangerous Drugs Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decub.</td>
<td>lying down (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIC</td>
<td>drunk in charge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dl</td>
<td>decilitre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DN</td>
<td>District Nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA</td>
<td>did not attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA</td>
<td>deoxyribonucleic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOA</td>
<td>dead on arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOB</td>
<td>date of birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRDCOG</td>
<td>Diploma of the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRO</td>
<td>Disablement Resettlement Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DS</td>
<td>disseminated sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTs</td>
<td>delirium tremens (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DU</td>
<td>duodenal ulcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVT</td>
<td>deep venous thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DWP</td>
<td>Department for Work and Pensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dx</td>
<td>diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>electrolytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBV</td>
<td>Epstein-Barr virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECF</td>
<td>extracellular fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>electrocardiogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECT</td>
<td>electroconvulsive therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDC</td>
<td>expected date of confinement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDD</td>
<td>expected date of delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDM</td>
<td>early diastolic murmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEG</td>
<td>electroencephalogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENT</td>
<td>ear, nose and throat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESN</td>
<td>educationally sub-normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>erythrocyte sedimentation rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETT</td>
<td>exercise tolerance test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EUA</td>
<td>examination under anaesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fb</td>
<td>finger breadth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FB</td>
<td>foreign body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBC</td>
<td>full blood count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FH</td>
<td>fetal heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FH</td>
<td>family history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHH</td>
<td>fetal heart heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHNNH</td>
<td>fetal heart not heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fl / fl</td>
<td>femtolitre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMFF</td>
<td>fetal movement first felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOB</td>
<td>faecal occult blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPC</td>
<td>family planning clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRCS</td>
<td>Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSH</td>
<td>follicle stimulating hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTAT</td>
<td>fluorescent treponemal antibody test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTBD</td>
<td>fit to be detained; full term born dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTND</td>
<td>full term normal delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUO</td>
<td>fever of unknown origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FY1</td>
<td>Foundation Year 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FY2</td>
<td>Foundation Year 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>gram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>gravidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g/L</td>
<td>grams per litre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GA</td>
<td>general anaesthetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB</td>
<td>gall bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GC</td>
<td>general condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCFT</td>
<td>gonococcal complement fixation test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCS</td>
<td>Glasgow Coma Scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GIS</td>
<td>gastro-intestinal system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GMC</td>
<td>General Medical Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GnRH</td>
<td>gonadotrophin-releasing hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOT</td>
<td>glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GP</td>
<td>General Practitioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI</td>
<td>general paralysis of the insane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPT</td>
<td>glutamic pyruvic transaminase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTN</td>
<td>glyceryl trinitrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTT</td>
<td>glucose tolerance test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GU</td>
<td>gastric ulcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUS</td>
<td>genito-urinary system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gy</td>
<td>Grays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gyn.</td>
<td>gynaecology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H&amp;P</td>
<td>history and physical examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hb / Hgb</td>
<td>haemoglobin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBP</td>
<td>high blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCT / Hct</td>
<td>haematocrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDU</td>
<td>high dependency unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHV-8</td>
<td>(human) herpes virus 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIB</td>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>human immunodeficiency virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HO</td>
<td>house officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP</td>
<td>house physician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPV</td>
<td>human papilloma virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR</td>
<td>heart rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HS</td>
<td>heart sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HVS</td>
<td>high vaginal swab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBS</td>
<td>irritable bowel syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICF</td>
<td>intracellular fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICS</td>
<td>intercostal space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICU</td>
<td>intensive care unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>infectious disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ig</td>
<td>immune globulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.m. / IM</td>
<td>intramuscular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMRaD</td>
<td>introduction, method, results and discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infusⁿ</td>
<td>infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOFB</td>
<td>intra-ocular foreign body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>in-patient; interphalangeal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IQ</td>
<td>intelligence quotient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSQ</td>
<td>condition unchanged / in statu quo (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IU</td>
<td>international unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUD</td>
<td>intrauterine (contraceptive) device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.v. / IV</td>
<td>intravenous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>inferior vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF</td>
<td>in vitro fertilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVP</td>
<td>intravenous pyelogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVU</td>
<td>intravenous urogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ix</td>
<td>investigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IZS</td>
<td>insulin zinc suspension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAMA</td>
<td>Journal of the American Medical Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVP</td>
<td>jugular venous pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>potassium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KUB</td>
<td>kidney, ureter and bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L/L</td>
<td>litres per litre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LA</td>
<td>left atrium; local anaesthetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAD</td>
<td>left axis deviation; left anterior descending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBP</td>
<td>low back pain; low blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDH</td>
<td>lactic dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE</td>
<td>lupus erythematosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LFT</td>
<td>liver function test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>luteinizing hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LHA</td>
<td>Local Health Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIF</td>
<td>left iliac fossa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIH</td>
<td>left inguinal hernia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LKS</td>
<td>liver, kidney and spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LLL</td>
<td>left lower lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LLQ</td>
<td>left lower quadrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMN</td>
<td>lower motor neurone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMP</td>
<td>last menstrual period; left mento-posterior position of fetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOA</td>
<td>left occipito-anterior position of fetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOP</td>
<td>left occipito-posterior position of fetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LP</td>
<td>lumbar puncture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSCS</td>
<td>lower segment caesarean section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUA</td>
<td>left upper arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUQ</td>
<td>left upper quadrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV</td>
<td>left ventricle; lumbar vertebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVD</td>
<td>left ventricular dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVE</td>
<td>left ventricular enlargement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVF</td>
<td>left ventricular failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVH</td>
<td>left ventricular hypertrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M/F</td>
<td>male/female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m/r</td>
<td>modified release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M/W/S</td>
<td>married/widow(er)/single</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mane</td>
<td>in the morning (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MB</td>
<td>Bachelor of Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCD</td>
<td>mean corpuscular diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mcg</td>
<td>microgram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCH</td>
<td>mean corpuscular haemoglobin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCHC</td>
<td>mean corpuscular haemoglobin concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCL</td>
<td>mid-clavicular line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCP</td>
<td>medical care practitioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCV</td>
<td>mean corpuscular volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD</td>
<td>Doctor of Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDM</td>
<td>mid-diastolic murmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mg</td>
<td>milligram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>mitral incompetence/insufficiency; myocardial infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitte</td>
<td>give/send (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ml</td>
<td>millilitre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmol/L</td>
<td>millimols per litre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMR</td>
<td>mass miniature radiography; measles, mumps &amp; rubella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MO</td>
<td>Medical Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOH</td>
<td>Medical Officer of Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOP</td>
<td>medical out-patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRC</td>
<td>Medical Research Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRCP</td>
<td>Member of the Royal College of Physicians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI</td>
<td>magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>mitral stenosis; multiple sclerosis; musculoskeletal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSSU</td>
<td>mid-stream specimen of urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSU</td>
<td>mid-stream urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSW</td>
<td>Medical Social Worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVP</td>
<td>mitral valve prolapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
<td>not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na</td>
<td>sodium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAD</td>
<td>no abnormality detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBI</td>
<td>no bone injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ND</td>
<td>normal delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE</td>
<td>not engaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHS</td>
<td>National Health Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIC</td>
<td>National Insurance Certificate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMC</td>
<td>Nursing and Midwifery Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NND</td>
<td>neo-natal death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nocte</td>
<td>at night (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOF</td>
<td>neck of femur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP</td>
<td>not palpable; nasal passage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPO</td>
<td>nothing by mouth (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPU</td>
<td>not passed urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NS</td>
<td>nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSA</td>
<td>no significant abnormality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSPCC</td>
<td>National Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NYD</td>
<td>not yet diagnosed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o.d.</td>
<td>daily (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O/E</td>
<td>on examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OA</td>
<td>on admission; osteo-arthritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAP</td>
<td>old age pensioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obs.</td>
<td>obstetrics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBS</td>
<td>organic brain syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oed.</td>
<td>oedema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OM</td>
<td>otitis media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OOH</td>
<td>out of hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPD</td>
<td>outpatient department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSCE</td>
<td>Objective Structured Clinical Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OT</td>
<td>operating theatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OT</td>
<td>occupational therapist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>pulse; protein; parity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.c.</td>
<td>after meals/food (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.m.</td>
<td>in the afternoon (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.o.</td>
<td>by mouth (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.r.</td>
<td>by rectum (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.r.n.</td>
<td>as required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.v.</td>
<td>by vagina (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA</td>
<td>pernicious anaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Para. 2 + 1</td>
<td>full term pregnancies 2, abortions 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAT</td>
<td>paroxysmal atrial tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBL</td>
<td>protein bound iodine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBL</td>
<td>problem-based learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDA</td>
<td>patent ductus arteriosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERLA</td>
<td>pupils equal and reactive to light and accommodation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PET</td>
<td>pre-eclamptic toxaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PH</td>
<td>past history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PID</td>
<td>prolapsed intervertebral disc; pelvic inflammatory disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>plasma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLAB</td>
<td>Professional and Linguistic Assessments Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM</td>
<td>postmortem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMB</td>
<td>postmenopausal bleeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMH</td>
<td>past medical history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PN</td>
<td>postnatal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PND</td>
<td>postnatal depression; paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO₂</td>
<td>pressure of oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP</td>
<td>plaster of Paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPH</td>
<td>postpartum haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRHO</td>
<td>provisionally-registered house officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROM</td>
<td>premature rupture of membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSW</td>
<td>Psychiatric Social Worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PU</td>
<td>passed urine; peptic ulcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUO</td>
<td>pyrexia of unknown or uncertain origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVT</td>
<td>paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PZI</td>
<td>protamine zinc insulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q.d.s. / q.i.d.</td>
<td>four times a day (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>right; respiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA</td>
<td>rheumatoid arthritis; right atrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAD</td>
<td>right axis deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBC</td>
<td>red blood cell (count); red blood corpuscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBS</td>
<td>random blood sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCA</td>
<td>right coronary artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ref.</td>
<td>refer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reg.</td>
<td>regular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGN</td>
<td>Registered General Nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rh.</td>
<td>Rhesus factor; rheumatism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHA</td>
<td>Regional Health Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>respiratory infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIF</td>
<td>right iliac fossa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIH</td>
<td>right inguinal hernia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLL</td>
<td>right lower lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLQ</td>
<td>right lower quadrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RM</td>
<td>registered midwife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMO</td>
<td>Regional or Resident Medical Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RN</td>
<td>registered nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROA</td>
<td>right occipital anterior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROM</td>
<td>range of motion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROP</td>
<td>right occipital posterior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RS</td>
<td>respiratory system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTA</td>
<td>road traffic accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTC</td>
<td>return to clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTI</td>
<td>respiratory tract infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RUA</td>
<td>right upper arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RUQ</td>
<td>right upper quadrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RVE</td>
<td>right ventricular enlargement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RVH</td>
<td>right ventricular hypertrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rx</td>
<td>take (in prescriptions); treatment (in case notes) (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>single; sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s.c.</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s.l.</td>
<td>sublingual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAH</td>
<td>subarachnoidal haemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SB</td>
<td>still-born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBE</td>
<td>sub-acute bacterial endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sep.</td>
<td>separated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>specific gravity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH</td>
<td>social history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHO</td>
<td>Senior House Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI</td>
<td>sacro-iliac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sig.</td>
<td>write/label (in prescriptions) (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl.</td>
<td>slight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SM</td>
<td>systolic murmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMR</td>
<td>sub-mucous resection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN</td>
<td>student nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOB</td>
<td>short of breath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOBOE</td>
<td>short of breath on exertion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOP</td>
<td>surgical out-patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpR</td>
<td>specialist registrar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRN</td>
<td>State Registered Nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SROM</td>
<td>spontaneous rupture of membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stat.</td>
<td>immediately (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STs</td>
<td>sanitary towels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVC</td>
<td>superior vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVD</td>
<td>spontaneous vertex delivery; spontaneous vaginal delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sw / sw.</td>
<td>swab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWD</td>
<td>short wave diathermy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T&amp;A</td>
<td>tonsils and adenoids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t.d.s. / t.i.d.</td>
<td>three times a day (Latin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>tri-iodothyronine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>tetra-iodothyronine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tabs</td>
<td>tablets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TB</td>
<td>tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TI</td>
<td>tricuspid incompetence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIA</td>
<td>transient ischaemic attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TM</td>
<td>transport medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation or symbol</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMJ</td>
<td>temporo-mandibular joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNS</td>
<td>transcutaneous nerve stimulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOP</td>
<td>termination of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPHA</td>
<td>treponema pallidum haemagglutination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPR</td>
<td>temperature, pulse, respiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR</td>
<td>temporary resident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRH</td>
<td>thyrotrophin-releasing hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS</td>
<td>tricuspid stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSH</td>
<td>thyroid-stimulating hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TT</td>
<td>tetanus toxoid; tuberculin tested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TURP</td>
<td>transurethral prostate resection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>trichomonas vaginalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>urea; unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U&amp;E</td>
<td>urea and electrolytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U/L</td>
<td>units per litre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UGS</td>
<td>urogenital system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UMN</td>
<td>upper motor neurone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URTI</td>
<td>upper respiratory tract infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USS</td>
<td>ultrasound scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UVL</td>
<td>ultra-violet light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VD</td>
<td>venereal disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDRL</td>
<td>venereal disease research laboratory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VE</td>
<td>vaginal examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>virgo intacta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP</td>
<td>venous pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSD</td>
<td>ventricular septal defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VV</td>
<td>varicose vein(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vx</td>
<td>vertex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>widow/widower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WBC</td>
<td>white blood cell count; white blood corpuscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WCC</td>
<td>white cell count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>World Health Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WNL</td>
<td>within normal limits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WR</td>
<td>Wassermann reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XR</td>
<td>X-ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YOB</td>
<td>year of birth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ointments are greasier than creams and have a thicker texture. This makes them adhere to the affected area longer. Creams are more acceptable cosmetically and tend to be used on the face as they are less visible. Pastes are stiffer preparations which contain more powdered solids. Lotions are liquid and used in areas such as the scalp where an ointment or cream would adhere to the hair.
Symptoms and pain

Asking about symptoms

Pain is one of the commonest symptoms.

For headaches, a doctor would expect to establish most of the features below. Similar questions can be used for other forms of pain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Typical question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Main Site</td>
<td>Where does it hurt? Show me where it hurts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation</td>
<td>Does it go anywhere else?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character</td>
<td>Can you describe the pain?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precipitating factors</td>
<td>Does anything bring them on?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of onset</td>
<td>When do they start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of resolution</td>
<td>When do they stop?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>How often do you get them?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggravating factors</td>
<td>Does anything make them worse? Is there anything else that affects them?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relieving factors</td>
<td>Does anything make them better?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated features</td>
<td>Do you feel anything else wrong when it’s there? Have you any other problems related to the pain?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>How long do they last?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>How bad is it?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description of pain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient’s description of pain</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aching/an ache</td>
<td>a general pain, often in muscles and joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boring</td>
<td>like a drill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burning</td>
<td>with heat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colicky</td>
<td>an intermittent pain which varies in intensity, comes and goes in waves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cramped/cramp</td>
<td>an involuntary spasmody muscle contraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crushing</td>
<td>a feeling of pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dull</td>
<td>a background pain, opposite of sharp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gnawing</td>
<td>biting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gripping</td>
<td>a feeling of tightness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scalding</td>
<td>like boiling water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sharp</td>
<td>acute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stabbing</td>
<td>like a knife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stinging</td>
<td>sharp, burning, like an insect sting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throbbing</td>
<td>with a pulse or beat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend down</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put your head down</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put out your tongue</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathe in</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathe out</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raise your leg</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close your eyes</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roll on to your back/front</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roll over</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roll up your sleeve</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curl up</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit up</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do this</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slide your hand down</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your side</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>follow my fingertip with your eyes</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slip off your coat</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep your knee straight</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand straight</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand up</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let your wrist go floppy</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off your top things</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie on your side/back</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie on the bed/couch</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie down</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tilt your head back</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look straight ahead</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look at something</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch your shoulder with your chin</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open your mouth</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn your head to the left</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn on your side</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point to the finger that moves</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relax</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show me what movements you can manage</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell me if it hurts</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull as hard as you can</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push as hard as you can</td>
<td>[Illustration]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other instructions:
- relax
- show me what movements you can manage
- tell me if it hurts
Lay terms and definitions

Explanations should be given in words the patient will understand, avoiding medical jargon. Using lay terms – words familiar to people without medical knowledge – can help patients understand explanations.

Some lay terms for medical conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medical conditions</th>
<th>Lay term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acute cerebrovascular event</td>
<td>stroke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrhythmia</td>
<td>palpitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dyspnoea</td>
<td>breathlessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fractured neck of femur</td>
<td>broken hip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haematemesis</td>
<td>vomiting blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haematuria</td>
<td>blood in the urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insomnia</td>
<td>trouble with sleeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intermittent claudication</td>
<td>pains in the back of the legs when walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myocardial infarction</td>
<td>heart attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nocturia</td>
<td>needing to pass urine (water) at night</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some lay terms for medication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medical conditions</th>
<th>Lay term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>analgesics</td>
<td>pain killers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anti-depressants</td>
<td>tablets to improve your mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anti-inflammatories</td>
<td>medicine to reduce swelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broncho-dilator</td>
<td>a substance which causes the airways to open up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMARDs (disease modifying anti-rheumatic drugs)</td>
<td>pills that help stop arthritis progressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diuretics</td>
<td>water tablets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypertension medication</td>
<td>pills for blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypnotics</td>
<td>sleeping tablets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oral contraceptives</td>
<td>the pill</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Simple definitions

Most patients do not have any medical knowledge, so it is important to use simple words they will understand when talking about certain parts of the body or medical conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medical term</th>
<th>Simple definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arteries</td>
<td>tubes which carry blood around the body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benign</td>
<td>not due to cancer or infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bronchi</td>
<td>airways that connect your windpipe to your lungs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholesterol</td>
<td>fat that clogs the arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intervertebral disks</td>
<td>shock absorbers which separate the bones in your back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oesophagus</td>
<td>the tube that connects the back of the throat to the stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pancreas</td>
<td>a gland that helps digestion and makes insulin to control blood sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thyroid</td>
<td>a gland that produces some of the hormones required in daily life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urethra</td>
<td>the tube that carries urine from the bladder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.1 | **Noun** | **Adjective** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fitness</td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health</td>
<td>healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illness</td>
<td>ill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sickness</td>
<td>sick</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 | complete remission |
| feel sick |
| get over |
| poor health |
| travel sickness |

1.3 | 1 well |
| 2 unwell/ill/poorly/sick |
| 3 health |
| 4 fit |
| 5 well |
| 6 sick |
| 7 sick |
| 8 illnesses |

1.4 | 1 deteriorated |
| 2 recovered |
| 3 sickness |
| 4 recovery |
| 5 good |
| 6 got over |
| 7 unhealthy |

2.1 | **Anatomical term** | **Common word** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abdomen</td>
<td>stomach, tummy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axilla</td>
<td>armpit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpus</td>
<td>wrist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coxa</td>
<td>hip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubitus</td>
<td>elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mamma</td>
<td>breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nates</td>
<td>buttocks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patella</td>
<td>kneecap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 | a 1 chest |
| b 1 in |
| 2 into |
| 3 neck/jaw |
| 4 shoulder |
| 5 down |
| 6 arm |
| 2 groin |
| 3 down |

2.3 | 1 groin |
| 2 tummy/stomach |
| 3 navel |
| 4 chest |
| 5 armpit |
| 6 jaw |

2.4 | **Trunk** | **Upper limb** | **Lower limb** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abdomen</td>
<td>elbow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest</td>
<td>finger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loin</td>
<td>wrist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>arm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thigh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1 | 1 windpipe |
| 2 lung |
| 3 lobes |
| 4 diaphragm |
| 5 airways |
| 6 heart |
| 7 bronchioles |

3.2 | 1e, 2f, 3d, 4g, 5a, 6c, 7b, 8h |

3.3 | 1 organs |
| 2 liver |
| 3 gall bladder |
| 4 kidney |
| 5 kidney |
| 6 spleen |
| 7 bladder |
Over to you – sample answer
The spleen is situated on the upper left side of your abdomen, under your ribs. It acts as a filter, helping to destroy old, worn-out blood cells. It also produces cells that help protect your body from infection.

The pancreas is a gland deep inside your abdomen, behind your liver. It normally produces insulin, which your body needs to help it store and utilize glucose, and so it is important in controlling the amount of sugar in your blood.

4.1 1b, 2d, 3e, 4c, 5a

4.2 1 numbness  2 swallowing  3 passing urine/water  4 sweating  5 shake  6 breathing

4.3 1 chew, swallow  2 pass  3 appetite  4 have  5 sense  6 breath

Over to you – sample answer
1 Do you pass water more than usual?
2 Do you drink more than usual?
3 What's your appetite like?
4 Is your sight/vision normal?
5 Have you noticed any numbness in your hands or feet?

5.1 1 A dermatologist specializes / is a specialist in diseases of the skin.
2 A rheumatologist specializes / is a specialist in diseases of the joints.
3 A traumatologist specializes / is a specialist in accident and emergency medicine.
4 A paediatrician specializes / is a specialist in diseases affecting children.
5 An obstetrician specializes / is a specialist in managing pregnancies.

5.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun (person)</th>
<th>Noun (activity) or thing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>specialize</td>
<td>'specialist'</td>
<td>'specialty'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'practise'</td>
<td>practitioner</td>
<td>'practice'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consult</td>
<td>consultant</td>
<td>consultation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assist</td>
<td>a' ssistant</td>
<td>a' ssistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'graduate'</td>
<td>'graduate'</td>
<td>graduation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'qualify'</td>
<td></td>
<td>qualification</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3 1 specializes in  2 working with  3 interested in  4 good at  5 good with

5.4 consulting rooms
general practitioner
general practice
group practice
health centre
internal medicine
surgical specialties

Over to you – sample answer
To be a surgeon you need to be:
good with your hands
interested in anatomy
able to repeat the same thing without getting bored
able to make decisions fast
6.1 associate specialist  
    house officer  
    on call  
    provisional diagnosis  
    radio pager  
    ward round

6.2 1c, 2d, 3a, 4c, 5b

6.3 1 false – After a year, he or she becomes a registered medical practitioner  
    2 true  
    3 false – the old terms senior house officer and SHO are still used  
    4 false – they are usually seen first by one of the junior doctors  
    5 false – Junior doctors now normally work in shifts ... for example 7 am to 3 pm ... or 11 pm to 7 am. The alternative system is to work from 9 am to 5 pm every day and to take turns to be on call ...

6.4 1 shift  
    2 admissions  
    3 clerk  
    4 round  
    5 tests  
    6 discharged  
    7 training/Foundation

7.1 1 midwife  
    2 clinical support worker

7.2 carry out a procedure  
    change a dressing  
    check the temperature  
    give an injection  
    remove sutures

7.3 1 to perform  
    2 was performed  
    3 be performed  
    4 be performed  
    5 performed

7.4 1 to carry out  
    2 have been carried out

7.5 3 have been carried out  
    5 be carried out  
    4 was carried out

8.1 ambulance technician  
    artificial limb  
    club foot  
    contact lens  
    health professional  
    intraocular pressure  
    occupational therapist  
    social worker

8.2 1 social worker  
    2 physiotherapist

8.3 1 amputation  
    2 limb

8.4 3 therapists  
    4 rehabilitation  
    5 splints  
    6 deformity/deformities  
    7 relieve

9.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>admit</td>
<td>admission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assess</td>
<td>assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discharge</td>
<td>'discharge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'operate</td>
<td>operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refer</td>
<td>referral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'treat</td>
<td>'treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.2 acutely ill
assessment unit
on duty
referral letter
waiting list

9.3 1 Intensive Care Unit (ICU) / assessment unit
2 High Dependency Unit (HDU)
3 Day Surgery Unit
4 Gynaecology (Emergency)
5 Accident & Emergency (A&E)

9.4 1 clinic/hospital
2 treatment
3 tests
4 department
5 referred
6 admitted
7 day
8 discharged

10.1 1 prescription charges
2 housebound
3 appointment
4 locum
5 out-of-hours

10.2 change dressings
make appointments
make home visits
perform minor surgery
refer a patient
run a clinic
supervise staff
take messages

10.3 1 midwife
2 physiotherapist
3 receptionist
4 practice nurse
5 district nurse
6 health visitor
7 practice manager

10.4 1 surgery
2 appointments
3 Reception
4 visits
5 prescription
6 referrals
7 OOH

11.1 1 undergraduate
2 postgraduate
3 foundation programme
4 undergraduate
5 continuing professional development

11.2 1 elective
2 problem-based learning
3 lectures
4 clinical attachments
5 student selected modules
6 cadavers
7 medical school
8 consultant
9 College

11.3 1 overseas elective
2 problem-based learning / PBL
3 dissection
4 clinical attachment
5 clinical skills
6 student selected module

12.1 1 demonstrate
2 supervise
3 deliver/provide
4 take
5 assess/demonstrate

12.2 1d, 2h, 3f, 4b, 5g, 6c, 7a, 8c

12.3 1 Bachelor of Medicine, Bachelor of Surgery, Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons of England, Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons of Ireland
2 Bachelor of Medical Sciences, Doctor of Medicine, Member of the Royal College of Physicians
3 Bachelor of Medicine, Bachelor of Surgery, Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons
4 Bachelor of Medicine, Doctor of Medicine, Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians

13.1 1 provisional registration
2 limited registration
3 full registration
4 specialist registration

13.2 1 General Medical Council
2 Professional and Linguistic Assessments Board
3 Objective Structured Clinical Examination
4 airways, breathing, circulation
5 Certificate of Completion of Training
13.3 1 limited registration  4 stations  7 specialist registration 
2 GMC  5 full registration 
3 PLAB  6 CCT / Certificate of 
Completion of Training 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ex'haustion</td>
<td>ex'hausted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'tigue</td>
<td>fa'tigued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'lthargy</td>
<td>'lthargic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'tired</td>
<td>'tired</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2 complain of 
off-colour 
out of sorts 
present with 
put on 
worn out 

14.3 1 presented 3 present 5 presenting 7 presenting 
2 presentation 4 presents 6 presentation 8 presentation 

14.4 1 complained 2 malaise 3 gained 4 presented 5 constipated 

Over to you – sample answer 
A 60-year-old man presented to his GP with malaise and fatigue for several months. He also complained of anorexia and weight loss of 10 kg.

15.1 adequate – inadequate 
against – for 
insidious – sudden 
likely – unlikely 
severe – mild 
rare – common 

15.2 bone marrow 
differential diagnosis 
insidious onset 
iron deficiency 
pernicious anaemia 
progressively increasing 
vibration sense 

15.3 1 progressive 3 platelet 5 jaundice 7 adequate 
2 deficiency 4 exclude 6 palpable 8 breakdown 

15.4 1 insidious onset 2 pallor 3 symmetrical 4 vibration 5 sore 

Over to you – sample answer 
Causes of anaemia mentioned: chronic blood loss associated with carcinoma of the bowel or chronic bleeding ulcer, leukaemia, aplastic anemia, iron deficiency, pernicious anaemia
16.1 1 skull  
2 jaw bone  
3 spine  
4 breastbone  
5 rib  
6 collarbone  
7 shoulder blade  
8 thigh bone  
9 kneecap  
10 shinbone

16.2 1a, 2c, 3d, 4b, 5e

16.3 1 Reducing  
2 unite  
3 malunion

17.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun(s)</th>
<th>Adjective(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>delay</td>
<td>delay</td>
<td>delayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>development</td>
<td>developed, developing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distend</td>
<td>distension</td>
<td>distended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>failure</td>
<td>failing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nourish</td>
<td>nourishment, nutrition</td>
<td>nourished</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 failure 2 distension 3 development 4 nutrition 5 Delay

17.2 1 crawl 2 weaned 3 stature 4 milestones 5 puberty/maturity

17.3 1 mumps 3 German measles 5 chickenpox 7 scarlet fever 9 polio
2 lockjaw 4 whooping cough 6 measles 8 rheumatic fever 10 croup

18.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inhibit</td>
<td>inhib'ition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro'duce</td>
<td>pro'duction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re'lease</td>
<td>re'lease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re'place</td>
<td>re'placement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se'crete</td>
<td>se'cretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'stimulate</td>
<td>stimu'lation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18.2 Answers given are the words used in the original text; possible alternatives are shown in brackets.
1 stimulate (trigger) 4 production (secretion) 7 secretion (production) 10 secretion (production)
2 release (secretion) 5 feeds 8 stimulates (triggers)
3 stimulates (triggers) 6 inhibit 9 produce

18.3 1 diffuse 2 localized 3 deficient 4 Excess

18.4 1d, 2c, 3a, 4e, 5g, 6b, 7f
Over to you – sample answer

Dear Doctor
I would be grateful if you would see this 60-year-old woman who complains of tiredness and constipation. She has gained 5 kilos in the past three months although she says her appetite is poor. She has noticed that her hair has begun to fall out and that her skin is very dry. I am wondering if she is hypothyroid.

19.1 Verb | Noun | Adjective
--- | --- | ---
accommodate | accommodation | 
constrict | constriction | constricted
converge | convergence | 
dilate | dilatation, dilatation | dilated
droop | 
drooping
oscillate | oscillation | 
react | reaction | 

19.2 1c, 2c, 3b, 4l, 5d, 6a

19.3 1 pupil 2 flame-shaped 3 cottonwool 4 arteries/arterioles 5 nipping

20.1 1 distended 3 quadrant 5 rigidity 7 masses
2 tenderness 4 guarding 6 tenderness 8 Bowel

20.2 1c, 2c, 3f, 4a, 5b, 6d

20.3 1f, 2a, 3b, 4g, 5e, 6c, 7d

21.1 1 (surgical) removal of the womb
2 heavy periods
3 inflammation of one of the tubes that connect the ovary to the womb
4 biopsy of (small piece of tissue removed from) the neck of the womb

21.2 menarche: 12 yrs
menstrual cycle: 4\(\frac{5}{28}\)
LMP: 1/52 ago
menorrhagia? no
dysmenorrhoea? no
discharge? a little white discharge

21.3 menarche: How old were you when you started to get them / your periods?
menstrual cycle: Are your periods regular? How long do the periods last usually?
LMP: When was your last period?
menorrhagia? Would you say they are light or heavy? Do you get clots?
dysmenorrhoea? Do you get period pains?
discharge? Is there any discharge between the periods? What colour is it?

21.4 1 prolonged/heavy 2 clots 3 periods 4 periods 5 flushes 6 oral 7 pill 8 coil

22.1 1 palpitations 2 shortness 3 breath 4 pillows 5 mitral valve
22.2 at rest
atrial fibrillation
cardiac output
cardiac failure
heart failure
on effort
pitting oedema
premature beats

22.3 1 breathlessness / shortness of breath
2 palpitations
3 breathlessness when lying flat
4 swelling

22.4 1 exertion/exercise/effort 2 episodes/attacks 3 palpitations 4 shortness 5 swelling

23.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auscultate</td>
<td>auscultation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine</td>
<td>examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inspect</td>
<td>inspection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palpate</td>
<td>palpation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percuss</td>
<td>percussion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.2 d Look for clubbing. (inspection)
e Feel the radial pulse. (palpation)
e Locate the apex beat. (palpation)
f Note any thrills. (palpation)
a Measure the heart size. (percussion)
b Are there any murmurs? (auscultation)

23.3 1 force 3 central/peripheral 5 beat 7 murmurs
2 pulses 4 peripheral/central 6 space 8 rub

Over to you – sample answer
Mentioned in B: central and peripheral cyanosis, clubbing, irregular pulse (in time and force), thrill, murmur, friction rub

24.1 1j, 2e, 3a, 4h, 5b, 6c, 7f, 8d, 9g, 10i

24.2 1 fever 2 rigors 3 incubation 4 prophylaxis 5 parasites

24.3 1 curable 2 outbreak 3 microorganisms 4 afebrile/apyrexial 5 glandular fever

25.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>affect</td>
<td>affective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anxiety</td>
<td>anxious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behaviour</td>
<td>behavioural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dementia</td>
<td>demented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disturbance</td>
<td>disturbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suicide</td>
<td>suicidal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25.2 1 behavioural syndrome  5 personality disorder
2 eating disorder  6 psychomotor retardation
3 major depression  7 sleep disturbance
4 mental retardation  8 substance abuse

25.3 1 behaviour  2 mood  3 panic attack  4 senile dementia  5 functional  6 compulsion

25.4 The patient has three of the listed symptoms:
tiredness (fatigue)
loss of interest
sleeping poorly (insomnia)

Over to you – sample answer
She does not meet the requirements for major depression as she has only three of the symptoms.
(In fact, investigations revealed that she was suffering from hypercalcaemia due to primary
hyperparathyroidism.)

26.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blind</td>
<td>blindness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conscious</td>
<td>consciousness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deaf</td>
<td>deafness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dizzy</td>
<td>dizziness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numb</td>
<td>numbness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light-headed</td>
<td>light-headedness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsteady</td>
<td>unsteadiness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.2 double vision
epileptic fit
prodromal symptom
syncopal attack
urinary incontinence
visual acuity

26.3 1 consciousness  3 passed  5 dizzy  7 control
2 warning  4 stress  6 light-headed  8 involuntary

Over to you – sample answer
According to the article, the smells are strawberry, smoke, soap, menthol, cloves, pineapple,
natural gas, lilac, lemon and leather.

27.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>absence</td>
<td>absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diminution</td>
<td>diminished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flaccidity</td>
<td>flaccid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spasticity</td>
<td>spastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wasting</td>
<td>wasted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27.2 1 muscle tone  3 power
2 muscle bulk and possibly involuntary movements  4 coordination
27.3  1 flaccid  2 brisk  3 wasting  4 involuntary  5 Babinski/plantar  6 coordination
7 tendon/reflex hammer  8 diminished

27.4  GCS 5 (eye opening: to speech = 3, verbal response: none = 1, motor response: none = 1)
Over to you – sample answer
jaw jerk, biceps jerk, triceps jerk, supinator (wrist) jerk, knee jerk, ankle jerk
Diagnosis: the patient has Parkinson’s disease.

28.1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun(s)</th>
<th>Adjective(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cure</td>
<td>cure</td>
<td>curative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excise</td>
<td>excision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>growth</td>
<td>growing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invade</td>
<td>invasion</td>
<td>invasive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obstruct</td>
<td>obstruction</td>
<td>obstructive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palliate</td>
<td>palliation</td>
<td>palliative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palpate</td>
<td>palpation</td>
<td>palpable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spread</td>
<td>spread</td>
<td>spreading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swell</td>
<td>swelling</td>
<td>swollen, swollen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28.2  6, 3, 7, 2, 8, 4, 5, 1

28.3  1 spread  3 painless  5 benign  7 palliative
2 obstruction 4 malignant 6 Secondary 8 palpable

Over to you – sample answer
I’m afraid you have a condition called lymphoma, which is a tumour of certain white blood cells
called lymphocytes. There are different types of lymphoma and we need to do more tests to find
out which particular type you have. Some types require no immediate treatment. For others you
may need drug treatment or radiotherapy.

29.1  1 premature  3 trimester  5 presentation 7 (umbilical) cord, stillborn
2 termination 4 labour, section 6 miscarriage

29.2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abort</td>
<td>abortion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deliver</td>
<td>delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>induce</td>
<td>induction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miscarry</td>
<td>miscarriage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terminate</td>
<td>termination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29.3  1 terminated  2 aborted  3 delivered  4 induction  5 presented  6 delivered

30.1  blood-stained
breath sounds
pleural rub
productive cough
vocal resonance

156  Professional English in Use Medicine
30.2 1 Do you cough up any phlegm? / Is it a loose cough?  
2 What colour is the phlegm?  
3 Is it ever yellow?  
4 Have you noticed any blood in it?  
5 Any problems with your breathing?

30.3 1 true – A productive cough is often described as loose … A cough may be productive, where the patient coughs up sputum (or phlegm)  
2 false – crackles … suggest the presence of fluid in the lungs  
3 false – A cough may be … non-productive, where there is no sputum  
4 false – wheezes … indicate narrowing of the airways. The sound of an asthma patient’s breathing is also called wheeze  
5 false – The sound heard when the pleural surfaces are inflamed, as in pleurisy, is called a pleural rub

Over to you – sample answer
A 36-year-old man complained of sudden right-sided chest pain with shortness of breath/breathlessness/dyspnoea, while watching television. The pain was made worse by deep breaths and by coughing. The shortness of breath persisted over the 4 hours from its onset to his arrival in the Accident & Emergency department. He had a slight non-productive cough. There was no relevant past medical history or family history. He had had a three-week holiday in Australia three weeks previously.

On examination his temperature was 37.4°C, his respiratory rate was 24/min, his jugular venous pressure was raised 3 cm, his blood pressure was 110/64, and his pulse rate 128/min. In the respiratory system, expansion was reduced because of pain. There was a pleural rub over the right lower zone posteriorly. There were no other added sounds. Otherwise no abnormality was detected.

Diagnosis: This man had a pulmonary embolus.

31.1 1 Shingles 3 small blisters 5 small blisters 7 scabs  
2 spots 4 spots/blisters 6 filled with pus 8 scars

31.2 location and distribution: first behind the ears and on the forehead then the trunk and limbs  
grouping: scattered  
type of lesion: macules  
colour: pink

31.3 location and distribution: widespread on the chest and abdomen  
grouping: scattered  
type of lesion: small macules with some scales  
colour: pink  
(guttate psoriasis)

31.4 location and distribution: below lateral angle of the left eye  
grouping: single  
type of lesion: nodule  
colour: white/pink  
(basal cell carcinoma)
32.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common word</th>
<th>Medical term</th>
<th>Type of force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bruise</td>
<td>contusion, haematoma</td>
<td>blunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>incised wound</td>
<td>sharp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graze</td>
<td>abrasion</td>
<td>blunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scratch</td>
<td>linear abrasion</td>
<td>blunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stab wound</td>
<td>penetrating wound</td>
<td>sharp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>laceration</td>
<td>blunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.2  1 grazes  2 contusion  3 tears

32.3 There is a laceration/tear on the left shoulder and an incised wound / a cut approximately 6 cm in length above the left nipple.

32.4 1 sore  2 stab/penetrating  3 blow/punch  4 superficial

33.1 1 frequency  2 nocturia  3 dysuria  4 hesitancy  5 stream/flow  6 dribbling

33.2 1b, 2a, 3e, 4f, 5d, 6g, 7c

33.3 Possible questions:
- frequency: How often is that? How often do you pass urine?
- dysuria: Do you get any burning or pain when you pass water?
- nocturia: Do you have to get up at night?
- hesitancy: Do you have any trouble getting started?
- incontinence: Do you ever lose control of your bladder?
- haematuria: Have you ever passed blood in the urine?
- urgency: Do you have to rush/hurry to get to the toilet in time?

33.4 There was a trace of blood, gross proteinuria, and no casts.

Over to you – sample answer
Mr Jones has early prostatic hypertrophy.

34.1 1b, 2c, 3a, 4d

34.2 1 cuff  2 diaphragm  3 pump  4 valve, gauge  5 systolic blood pressure  6 diastolic  7 diastolic

34.3 1 Phlebotomists  2 venipuncture  3 fist  4 tourniquet  5 dressing  6 bruising  7 specimen tubes  8 laboratory
35.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suspected condition</th>
<th>Test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anaemia</td>
<td>EDTA blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bacterial conjunctivitis</td>
<td>Eye swab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genital herpes</td>
<td>Swab in Virus TM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meningitis</td>
<td>CSF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septicaemia</td>
<td>Blood culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urinary infection</td>
<td>MSU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urinary infection (catheter in place)</td>
<td>CSU</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.2

1 within normal limits, grams  
2 low, micromols per  
3 elevated, units per litre  
4 units per litre  
5 normal, micromols per litre

35.3
Possible answer:
Sodium is normal, one hundred and thirty-eight millimols per litre.
Potassium is within normal limits, four point five millimols per litre.
White cell count is elevated, twelve point two times ten to the power nine per litre.
Haematocrit is low, zero point two two four litres per litre.
Mean corpuscular volume is down, seventy-two point five femtolitres.
Alkaline phosphatase is unremarkable, seventy-two units per litre.
Alanine aminotransferase is reduced, nine units per litre.

36.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consent</td>
<td>consent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excise</td>
<td>excision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incise</td>
<td>incision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insert</td>
<td>insertion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recover</td>
<td>recovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swallow</td>
<td>swallow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

36.2

1 feed/insert/introduce  
2 jelly  
3 shaft/tube  
4 cauterize  
5 polyp  
6 excise  
7 rigid  
8 biopsy  
9 local anaesthetic  
10 get used to

36.3

1 pulse oximeter  
2 in the left lateral position  
3 nasal cannula  
4 premedication  
5 introduced  
6 transferred

37.1

1 medium  
2 radiolucent  
3 enema  
4 serial  
5 blurred  
6 inflated

37.2

1 radiology  
2 radiography  
3 radiotherapy  
4 radiolucent  
5 radiopaque  
6 radiographer

37.3

1 facing  
2 Push  
3 out  
4 still  
5 take  
6 hold  
7 sideways
### 37.4 Table of Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>breathe</td>
<td>breath</td>
<td>abnormal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drain</td>
<td>drainage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intervene</td>
<td>intervention</td>
<td>interventional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>therapy</td>
<td>therapeutic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 38.1
1c, 2d, 3a, 4b

### 38.2
a10, b6, c8, d4, e9, f5

### 38.3
a12, b17, c11, d13, e14

### 38.4
- breathe in
- excise diseased tissue
- experience discomfort
- foreign bodies
- hold your breath
- informed consent
- introduce the endoscope
- recovery area
- local anaesthetic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>local anaesthetic</td>
<td>recovery area</td>
<td>informed consent</td>
<td>foreign bodies</td>
<td>excise diseased tissue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 39.1
1 tracing
2 exercise tolerance test
3 a skipped heart beat
4 electrolyte disturbance
5 conduction
6 screening
7 calibrate
8 stylus

### 39.2
- a RA / right arm
- b RL / right leg
- c LL / left leg
- d LA / left arm
- e Chest positions

### 39.3
1 rate 2 complexes 3 wave 4 leads 5 interval

### 40.1
1e, 2g, 3i, 4b, 5a, 6c, 7d, 8f, 9h

### 40.2
1 Irritation 3 side-effect 5 blistering 7 Cautions 9 pharmacist
2 chemist's 4 contraindicated 6 dose 8 Indications 10 pharmacy

### 40.3
Streptokinase, one and a half million units by intravenous infusion over sixty minutes. Aspirin, three hundred milligrams, by mouth, immediately. Diamorphine, two point five to five milligrams, intravenously, immediately. Metoclopramide, ten milligrams, intravenously, immediately. GTN, three hundred micrograms per five millilitres, by intravenous infusion. Start at forty micrograms per minute.
41.1 1 scalpel 2 retractor 3 scissors 4 artery forceps
41.2 1 assistant 6 swabs/sucker
2 prepping/preparing 7 sucker/swabs
3 drapes 8 ligatures
4 sterile 9 drain
5 retractor 10 sutures/stitches/staples
41.3 1 divided 3 mobilized 5 infiltration 7 staples 9 closure
2 repaired 4 excised 6 preserving 8 redundant 10 layers
42.1 1 chemotherapy 3 physiotherapy 5 physiotherapy
2 radiotherapy 4 Cognitive Behavioural Therapy 6 Cognitive Behavioural Therapy
42.2 1 Curative 2 adjuvant 3 Palliative 4 implants 5 fraction
42.3 1 referrals 2 therapy 3 replacements 4 physiotherapist 5 Rehabilitating
43.1 1 Risk factors 3 false positives 5 booster 7 resistant to
2 false negatives 4 exposed to 6 contracted 8 outbreak
43.2 Possible answers:
1 Women aged from 50 to 70 should have mammography every three years to check for breast cancer.
2 Patients with heart disease should have a blood cholesterol test every six months to check their cholesterol level.
3 Women between 20 and 60 should have a smear test every three years to check for cervical cancer.
4 Patients over 40 with high risk factors should have their blood cholesterol checked every year.
5 Patients with diabetes should have ophthalmoscopy every year to check for diabetic retinopathy.
6 Pregnant women should have the AFP test between 16 and 17 weeks to check for neural tube defects and Down's Syndrome risk.
43.3 1 hepatitis A, malaria
2 hepatitis A, malaria, typhoid
3 hepatitis A, hepatitis B, malaria, typhoid
4 hepatitis A, rabies, Japanese encephalitis, malaria, typhoid
5 a booster dose for tetanus
44.1 1 case fatality 2 death/mortality 3 birth 4 survival 5 prevalence 6 incidence
44.2 1 more common 2 highest 3 common 4 lowest 5 low 6 uncommon/rare
44.3 affected by
association between
incidence of
lead to
rare in
1 incidence of 2 association between 3 lead to 4 rare in 5 affected by
45.1 a9, b7, c8, d3, e4, f2
45.2 1e, 2d, 3a, 4g, 5b, 6f, 7h, 8c
### 46.1 Noun & Verb Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bias</td>
<td>bias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>control</td>
<td>control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exposure</td>
<td>expose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participant (person)</td>
<td>participate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intervention</td>
<td>intervene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>study</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 46.2 Terminology

1. control
2. double-blind
3. longitudinal
4. cohort
5. randomized
6. placebo
7. risk
8. confounding

### 46.3 Study Types

1. longitudinal cohort study
2. double-blind, randomized controlled trial
3. case-control study
4. case-control study

### 47.1 Medical History

1. Do you have a partner?
2. What do you do for a living?
3. Can you describe the pain?
4. Where does it hurt?
5. Does it go anywhere else?
6. When does it start?
7. How long does it last?
8. Does anything bring it on?
9. Does anything make it better?
10. Have you any other problems related to the pain?

### 47.2 Head Pain

1. Which part of your head is affected?
2. Could you describe the pain?
3. How long do they last?
4. Does anything bring them on?
5. Does anything make them better?
6. Is there anything else that affects them?
7. Do you feel anything else wrong when it's there?

### 47.3 Pain Characteristics

1. gnawing, burning
2. stinging, scalding
3. sharp, burning
4. crampy, colicky
5. throbbing
6. ache
7. sharp
8. gripping

### 48.1 Medications

1. over-the-counter
2. dose
3. allergy
4. herbal remedy
5. siblings
6. Recreation
7. Housing
8. compliance

### 48.2 Family History

1. Are your parents alive and well?
2. How old was your father when he died?
3. Do you know the cause of death? / What did he die of?
4. Do you have any brothers and sisters / siblings?
5. Are all your close relatives alive?
6. What did he die of?
7. Does anyone in your family have a serious illness?
8. (As far as you know,) is anyone taking regular medication?
9. Do you have any children?

### 48.3 Personal Habits

1. What kind of house do you live in?
2. Are any of them at nursery or school?
3. Do you have any financial problems?
4. Do you have any hobbies or interests?
5. Do you smoke? How many a day?
6. Have you tried giving up?
7. How much do you drink in a week?
8. Can you give up alcohol when you want?
49.1  1a, 2c, 3e, 4c, 5b, 6d, 7f

49.2  1 I, 2 I, 3 C, 4 E

49.3  1 come on  2 put on  3 give up  4 carry on  5 bring up  6 turned out

Over to you – sample answer
  1 Have you had any pain or problems with your mouth?
  2 Is it difficult for you to swallow food or drink?
  3 Have you had any discomfort after eating?
  4 Do you ever get a burning feeling in your chest?
  5 Do you have any pains in your stomach?
  6 Have you lost any weight?
  7 Have you noticed any change in your bowel habit?
  8 What colour are your bowel movements?
  9 Have you noticed any blood in your stool?
 10 Does this come mixed with the stool or before or after?

50.1  1 Look, touch  3 Close  5 Touch  7 Lie  9 Roll up
  2 Sit, let  4 Take, off  6 Turn  8 Keep  10 Look at

50.2  1 Touch your shoulders with your hands.
  2 Put your hands behind your head.
  3 Put your hands behind your back.
  4 Raise your arms above your head.
  5 Bend your head forward ... backward.
  6 Bend your head to the right ... to the left.
  7 Turn your head to the right ... to the left.
  8 Bend backwards.
  9 Touch your toes.
 10 With your heel on the ground, turn your foot as far as you can.
 11 Bend your knee.
 12 Bend to the left ... to the right.
 13 Bend your toes up and down.

50.3  1 do you know what we’re going to do this morning
  2 what we do is
  3 a little bit of discomfort
  4 take very long.
  5 over
  6 could you (just)
  7 I’m going to
  8 ready
  9 you’ll feel
 10 very well
 11 over

51.1  1 delusion  3 illusion  5 deluded
  2 hallucinations  4 obsessional  6 disorientation
### 51.2 Noun | Adjective
--- | ---
confusion | confused
delusion | deluded
depression | depressive (illness)
depressed (patient)
disorientation | disoriented
obsession | obsessional (symptoms, thoughts)
obsessive compulsive (disorder)
psychiatry (field), psychiatrist (practitioner) | psychiatric

1 psychiatric 2 depression 3 depressed 4 disoriented

### 51.3
1 Can you describe your mood at the moment?
2 Do you take pleasure in anything?
3 How are your energy levels?
4 How long have you been feeling like this?
5 How are you sleeping?
6 What's your appetite like?
7 Have you noticed any change in your weight?
8 Can you keep your mind on things?
9 What do you feel the future holds for you?
10 Have you ever thought of suicide?

### 52.1
1 c
2 a, f
3 d
4 b, c

### 52.2
1 a stroke
2 tube which carries urine from the bladder
3 needing to pass urine frequently at night
4 breathlessness
5 a painkiller, medicine to reduce swelling
6 tablets to improve your mood

### 52.3
1 developed
2 (mainly) because you are
3 This is why / It's the reason why
4 give you advice on
5 make you an appointment with / arrange for you to see
6 going to start you on
7 should / should try to
8 want you to
9 arrange for you
10 Hopefully we can
11 anything you'd like to ask

### 53.1
1 carry on 2 gave up 3 end up 4 start, off 5 Cut down 6 settle 7 avoid

### 53.2
1c, 2f, 3c, 4a, 5b, 6d
53.3 Possible answers:
You should keep to a low cholesterol diet.
You should keep up any regular physical activity you are used to.
You shouldn’t do any activity that brings on angina.
You should avoid moving from floor to standing exercises too quickly.

Over to you – sample answer
The first option is to do nothing. The fibroid will shrink when you become menopausal, although we can’t be sure when that will be.

If you prefer, I can refer you to a gynaecologist to discuss surgical treatment. There are three possibilities: one is embolization which is relatively minor. It means closing off the artery that feeds the fibroid. The second would be removal of the fibroid alone without removing your womb. This needs abdominal surgery, as does a hysterectomy when your womb is removed.

You don’t have to decide today. I can give you leaflets and recommend websites for you to look at. Then come back and see me in two weeks’ time.

54.1 1 I’d like to record this consultation
2 I’m afraid / I’m sorry to have to tell you
3 isn’t an option
4 a lot we can do to help you
5 make you more comfortable
6 never be certain about these things
7 it’s a matter of months rather than years
8 I’m sorry to have to tell you
9 book you into
10 Could you tell me what

54.2 1 with 2 to 3 with 4 with 5 into 6 for

Over to you – sample answer
There are two questions about tumours in the brain – ‘Is it dangerous?’ and ‘Can it be removed?’ We know that yours isn’t cancerous. Can we remove it? Well, it’s quite large but I believe that if we can get as much of it out as possible, there’s a good chance we can cure you. If we do nothing, then I’m afraid it could kill you – not in the short term but perhaps in five years’ time. An operation like this on the brain carries significant risk. You could be disabled, or your personality could be affected. So you need to think carefully about whether or not you want to go ahead with the operation.

55.1 1 shows 2 compared 3 threelfold 4 doubled 5 trebled 6 twofold

55.2 1 less 3 under 5 about 7 less 9 nearly
2 almost 4 over 6 around 8 approximately

56.1 Verb Noun
decrease decrease
drop drop
down down
fall fall
increase increase
rise rise
56.2 1 dropped 2 rose 3 gradually 4 increased 5 steadily 6 fell 7 reaching a peak 8 accounted

56.3 1 line graph / bar chart 2 bar chart 3 pie chart

57.1 1 Results 5 Discussion (Main finding) 2 Introduction (Objective of the research) 6 Introduction (Background) 3 Method (Statistical analysis) 7 Discussion (Limitation) 4 Method (Subjects) 8 Results

57.2 Possible answers:
1 We assessed whether calcium and vitamin D supplementation reduce the risk of fractures in postmenopausal women.
2 The aim of our study was to determine whether the way doctors dress influences patients’ confidence and trust in them.
3 This study evaluated the risk of HHV-8 transmission by blood transfusion.
4 We investigated the association between never being married and increased risk of death.

57.3 Possible answers:
1 This study failed to show that calcium and vitamin D supplementation reduce the risk of fractures in postmenopausal women.
2 We have shown that the way doctors dress influences patients’ confidence and trust in them.
3 This study provides strong evidence of HHV-8 transmission by blood transfusion.
4 These results suggest that there is an association between never being married and increased risk of death.

58.1 1 objective 2 setting 3 subjects 4 outcome 5 design

58.2 1 Past employees of Shell Oil who retired at ages 55, 60, and 65 between 1 January 1973 and 31 December 2003
2 To assess whether early retirement is associated with better survival
3 Petroleum and petrochemical industry, United States
4 Hazard ratio of death adjusted for sex, year of entry to study, and socioeconomic status
5 Long term prospective cohort study
6 No

58.3 The correct order is: 3 (Objective), 7 (Design), 1 (Setting), 6 (Subjects), 2 (Main outcome measure), 4 (Results), 5 (Conclusion)

58.4 1d, 2b, 3a, 4c, 5c

59.1 The correct order is: 4 (Topic), 9 (Pathophysiology), 5 (Sources), 6 (Sources), 2 (Diagnosis), 8 (Diagnosis), 3 (Diagnosis), 10 (Diagnosis), 7 (Treatment), 1 (Treatment)

59.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Emphasizing</th>
<th>I think it’s important to emphasize that …</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Listing</td>
<td>First of all …</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exemplifying</td>
<td>such as …</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrasting</td>
<td>however …</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summing up</td>
<td>So …</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing topic</td>
<td>How do we diagnose it? Now, in relation to …</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Referring to a slide</td>
<td>On the slide here you’ll see …</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Announcing the topic</td>
<td>I’d like to tell you about …</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

166   Professional English in Use Medicine
60.1 c/o complained of
2/52 2 weeks
PH past history
FH family history
MI myocardial infarction
BP blood pressure
1/12 one month
nil nothing
SH social history
a&w alive and well
OE on examination
CXR chest X-ray

60.2 The correct order is: 1, 5, 8, 9, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7
(This patient had carcinoma of the bronchus.)

60.3 Mr McNamara, 63, taxi driver
C/o shortness of breath 3/12
ankle swelling 3/12
chronic cough, purulent sputum, occasional haemoptysis
PH partial gastrectomy, 1980
OE pale T 37°C
leg oedema
no clubbing or lymphadenopathy
chest NAD
liver 5cm palpable smooth and non-tender
scar of previous operation
(Mr McNamara had pulmonary tuberculosis.)